

# Owner's Manual FORD **MUSTANG**



July 2015  
First Printing



GR3J 19A321 AKA

The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of going to print. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2015

All rights reserved.

Part Number: GR3J 19A321 AKA 06/2015 20150610012556



# Table of Contents

---

## Introduction

About This Manual.....	5
Symbols Glossary.....	5
Data Recording.....	7
Replacement Parts Recommendation.....	8
Mobile Communications Equipment.....	8

## At a Glance

Front Exterior Overview.....	9
Rear Exterior Overview.....	10
Vehicle Interior Overview.....	11
Instrument Panel Overview - LHD.....	12
Instrument Panel Overview - RHD.....	13

## Child Safety

Installing Child Restraints.....	15
Child Restraint Positioning.....	18

## Seatbelts

Fastening the Seatbelts.....	21
Seatbelt Reminder.....	22

## Supplementary Restraints System

Principle of Operation.....	23
Driver Airbag.....	23
Passenger Airbag.....	24
Front Passenger Sensing System.....	24
Side Airbags.....	26
Driver and Passenger Knee Airbags.....	27
Side Curtain Airbags - Coupe.....	27
Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator.....	28

## Pedestrian Protection

Principle of Operation.....	30
-----------------------------	----

## Keys and Remote Controls

General Information on Radio Frequencies.....	32
Remote Control.....	32
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control.....	34

## MyKey™

Principle of Operation.....	35
Creating a MyKey.....	36
Clearing All MyKeys.....	37
Checking MyKey System Status.....	38
Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems.....	39
MyKey Troubleshooting.....	39

## Locks

Locking and Unlocking.....	40
Keyless Entry.....	42

## Security

Passive Anti-Theft System.....	45
Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Perimeter Alarm.....	45
Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Interior Sensor.....	45
Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Integral Battery.....	47

## Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....	49
Audio Control.....	49
Voice Control.....	50
Cruise Control.....	50
Information Display Control.....	50

## Wipers and Washers

Windshield Wipers.....	51
Autowipers.....	51
Windshield Washers.....	52

# Table of Contents

---

## Lighting

General Information.....	53
Lighting Control.....	53
Autolamps.....	54
Instrument Lighting Dimmer.....	55
Headlamp Exit Delay.....	55
Daytime Running Lamps.....	55
Front Fog Lamps.....	55
Rear Fog Lamps.....	56
Headlamp Leveling.....	56
Direction Indicators.....	57
Welcome Lighting.....	57
Interior Lamps.....	57
Ambient Lighting.....	57

## Windows and Mirrors

Power Windows.....	58
Global Opening.....	58
Exterior Mirrors.....	59
Interior Mirror.....	60
Sun Visors.....	60

## Instrument Cluster

Gauges.....	61
Warning Lamps and Indicators.....	63
Audible Warnings and Indicators.....	65

## Information Displays

General Information.....	67
Information Messages.....	75

## Climate Control

Principle of Operation.....	83
Air Vents.....	83
Manual Climate Control.....	84
Automatic Climate Control.....	86
Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate.....	87
Heated Windows and Mirrors.....	90

Cabin Air Filter.....	90
-----------------------	----

## Seats

Sitting in the Correct Position.....	91
Head Restraints.....	91
Manual Seats.....	92
Power Seats.....	93
Rear Seats.....	94
Climate Controlled Seats.....	94

## Auxiliary Power Points

Auxiliary Power Points.....	96
Cigar Lighter.....	96

## Storage Compartments

Cup Holders.....	97
Center Console.....	97
Glasses Holder.....	97

## Starting and Stopping the Engine

General Information.....	98
Keyless Starting.....	98
Steering Wheel Lock.....	99
Starting a Gasoline Engine.....	99
Engine Block Heater.....	101

## Fuel and Refueling

Safety Precautions.....	103
Fuel Quality.....	104
Fuel Filler Funnel Location.....	104
Running Out of Fuel.....	104
Catalytic Converter.....	105
Refueling.....	105
Fuel Consumption.....	107

## Transmission

Manual Transmission.....	109
Automatic Transmission.....	109

# Table of Contents

---

## Rear Axle

Limited Slip Differential.....	113
--------------------------------	-----

## Brakes

General Information.....	114
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes.....	114
Parking Brake.....	114
Hill Start Assist.....	115

## Traction Control

Principle of Operation.....	117
Using Traction Control.....	117

## Stability Control

Principle of Operation.....	118
Using Stability Control.....	119

## Parking Aids

Principle of Operation.....	122
Rear Parking Aid.....	122
Rear View Camera.....	123

## Cruise Control

Principle of Operation.....	127
Using Cruise Control.....	127

## Driving Aids

Drive Control.....	129
--------------------	-----

## Load Carrying

General Information.....	131
--------------------------	-----

## Towing

Towing a Trailer.....	132
Towing Points.....	132
Transporting the Vehicle.....	132
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels.....	133

## Convertible Top

Opening the Convertible Top.....	134
Closing the Convertible Top.....	135

## Driving Hints

Breaking-In.....	137
Reduced Engine Performance.....	137
Economical Driving.....	137
Cold Weather Precautions.....	138
Driving Through Water.....	138
Floor Mats.....	138

## Roadside Emergencies

Hazard Warning Flashers.....	140
First Aid Kit.....	140
Warning Triangle.....	140
Fuel Shutoff.....	140
Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	141
Post-Crash Alert System.....	143

## Fuses

Fuse Specification Chart.....	144
Changing a Fuse.....	151

## Maintenance

General Information.....	152
Opening and Closing the Hood.....	152
Under Hood Overview - 2.3L EcoBoost™.....	154
Under Hood Overview - 5.0L.....	155
Engine Oil Dipstick.....	156
Engine Oil Check.....	156
Engine Coolant Check.....	156
Automatic Transmission Fluid Check.....	157
Brake Fluid Check.....	158
Clutch Fluid Check - Manual Transmission.....	158
Washer Fluid Check.....	158
Fuel Filter.....	159

# Table of Contents

---

Changing the 12V Battery.....	159
Checking the Wiper Blades.....	160
Changing the Wiper Blades - LHD.....	160
Changing the Wiper Blades - RHD.....	161
Adjusting the Headlamps - LHD.....	162
Adjusting the Headlamps - RHD.....	163
Changing a Bulb.....	164
Bulb Specification Chart.....	168

## Vehicle Care

Cleaning the Exterior.....	169
Cleaning the Interior.....	169
Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....	170
Cleaning the Alloy Wheels.....	170

## Wheels and Tires

General Information.....	171
Temporary Mobility Kit.....	171
Tire Care.....	177
Using Summer Tires.....	178
Using Winter Tires.....	178
Using Snow Chains.....	178
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	179
Changing a Road Wheel.....	183
Driving at High Speed.....	188
Technical Specifications.....	189

## Capacities and Specifications

Vehicle Dimensions - Coupe.....	191
Vehicle Dimensions - Convertible.....	192
Vehicle Identification Plate.....	193
Vehicle Identification Number.....	194
Capacities and Specifications - 2.3L EcoBoost™.....	194
Capacities and Specifications - 5.0L.....	196
Fuel Consumption Figures.....	198

## Audio System

General Information.....	199
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: Premium AM/ FM/CD.....	200
Digital Radio.....	201
USB Port.....	203
Media Hub.....	203

## SYNC™ 2

General Information.....	204
Settings.....	211
Entertainment.....	225
Phone.....	233
Information.....	241
Climate.....	245
Navigation.....	248
SYNC™ Troubleshooting.....	258

## Appendices

Electromagnetic Compatibility.....	266
End User License Agreement.....	267
Type Approvals.....	289



# Introduction

## ABOUT THIS MANUAL

Thank you for choosing Ford. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle by reading this manual. The more that you know about your vehicle, the greater the safety and pleasure you will get from driving it.

### WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

**Note:** This manual describes product features and options available throughout the range of available models, sometimes even before they are generally available. It may describe options not fitted to the vehicle you have purchased.

**Note:** Some of the illustrations in this manual may show features as used in different models, so they may appear different to you on your vehicle.

**Note:** Always use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.

**Note:** Pass on this manual when selling your vehicle. It is an integral part of your vehicle.

This manual may qualify the location of a component as left-hand side or right-hand side. The side is determined when facing forward in the seat.



E154903

A Right-hand side.

B Left-hand side.

## SYMBOLS GLOSSARY

These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.



Safety alert



See Owner's Manual



Air conditioning system



Anti-lock braking system



Avoid smoking, flames or sparks



Battery



Battery acid



Brake fluid - non petroleum based

# Introduction



Brake system



Cabin air filter



Check fuel cap



Child safety door lock or unlock



Child seat lower anchor



Child seat tether anchor



Cruise control



Do not open when hot



Engine air filter



Engine coolant



Engine coolant temperature



Engine oil



Explosive gas



Fan warning



Fasten seatbelt



Front airbag



Front fog lamps



Fuel pump reset



Fuse compartment



Hazard warning flashers



Heated rear window



Heated windshield



Interior luggage compartment release



Jack



Keep out of reach of children



Lighting control



Low tire pressure warning



Maintain correct fluid level



Note operating instructions



Panic alarm

# Introduction



Parking aid



Parking brake



Power steering fluid



Power windows front/rear



Power window lockout



Service engine soon



Side airbag



Shield the eyes



Stability control



Windshield wash and wipe

## DATA RECORDING

A large number of electronic components of your vehicle contain data storage modules temporarily or permanently storing technical data about the condition of the vehicle, events and malfunctions.

In general, this technical information documents the condition of parts, modules, systems or the environment:

- Operating conditions of system components (e.g. filling levels).
- Status messages of the vehicle and its individual components (e.g. number of wheel revolutions/rotational speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration).
- Malfunctions and defects in important system components (e.g. lighting and brake system).
- Vehicle reactions in particular driving situations (e.g. inflation of an airbag, activation of the stability regulation system).
- Environmental conditions (e.g. temperature).

These data are exclusively technical and help identification and correction of malfunctions as well as optimisation of vehicle functions. Motion profiles indicating travelled routes cannot be created with these data.

If services are used (e.g. repair works, service processes, warranty cases, quality assurance), employees of the service network (including manufacturers) are able to read out this technical information from the event and malfunction data storage modules using special diagnostic devices. If required, you will receive further information. After a malfunction has been corrected, these data are deleted from the malfunction storage module or they are constantly overwritten.

When using the vehicle, situations may occur in which these technical data related to other information (accident report, damages on the vehicle, witness statements, etc.) may be associated with a specific person - possibly, with the assistance of an expert.

# Introduction

---

Additional functions contractually agreed upon with the client (e.g. vehicle location in emergency cases) allow the transmission of particular vehicle data from the vehicle.

## REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION

Your vehicle has been built to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

### Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner's Manual. Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

### Collision Repairs

We hope that you never experience a collision, but accidents do happen. Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle development we validate these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

### Warranty on Replacement Parts

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty. Damage caused to your vehicle as a result of the failure of non-Ford parts may not be covered by the Ford Warranty. For additional information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.

### MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT

Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, you must not compromise your own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits. Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.

#### WARNING

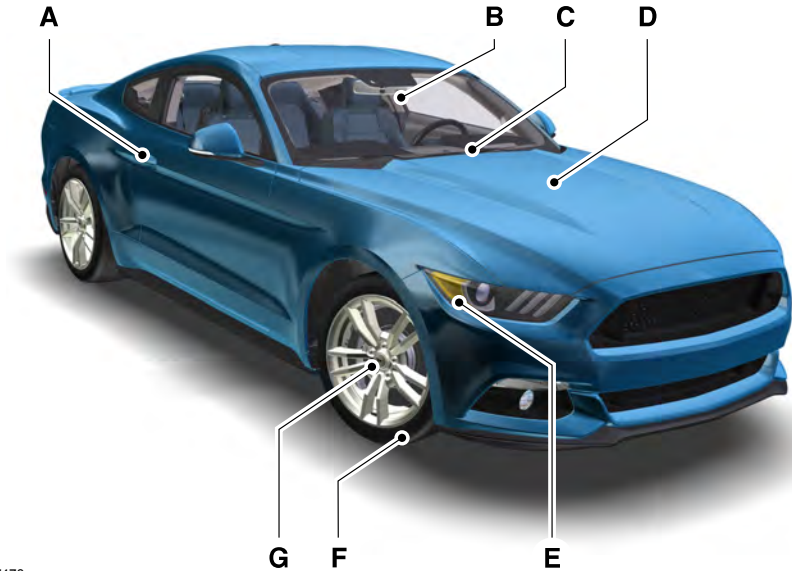


Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

---

# At a Glance

## FRONT EXTERIOR OVERVIEW

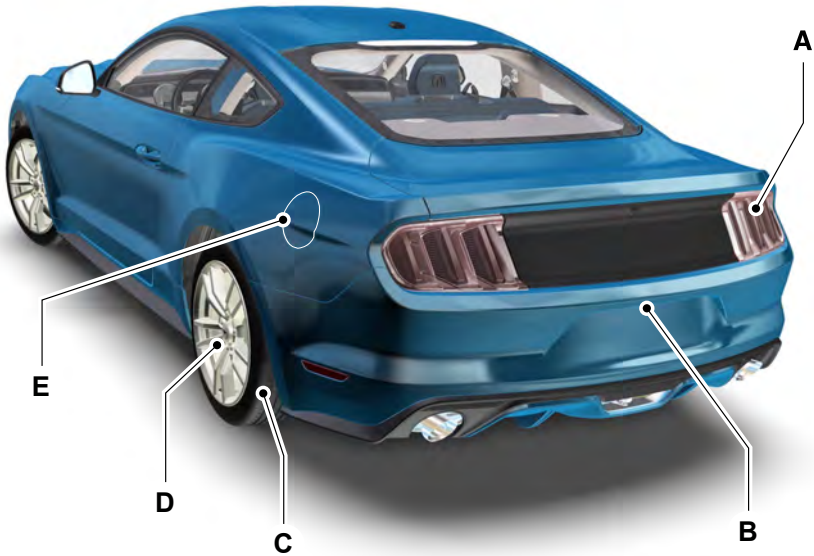


E177478

- A Locks. See **Locking and Unlocking** (page 40).
- B Rain sensor. See **Autowipers** (page 51). See **Autolamps** (page 54).
- C Front wiper blades. See **Changing the Wiper Blades** (page 160).
- D Engine. See **Maintenance** (page 152).
- E Front exterior lamps. See **Changing a Bulb** (page 164).
- F Tire pressures. See **Technical Specifications** (page 189).
- G Wheels and tires. See **Changing a Road Wheel** (page 183).

# At a Glance

## REAR EXTERIOR OVERVIEW

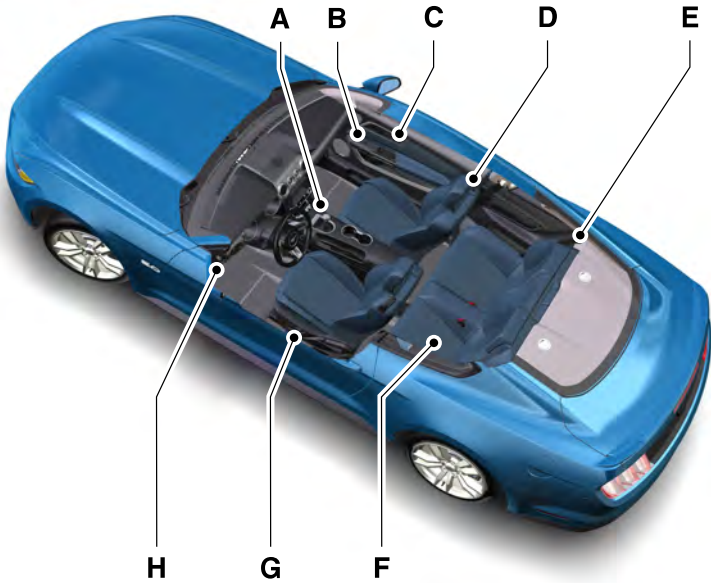


E206022

- A Rear exterior lamps. See **Changing a Bulb** (page 164).
- B Luggage compartment release button. See **Locks** (page 40).
- C Tire pressure. See **Technical Specifications** (page 189).
- D Wheels and tires. See **Changing a Road Wheel** (page 183).
- E Fuel tank filler door. See **Refueling** (page 105).

# At a Glance

## VEHICLE INTERIOR OVERVIEW

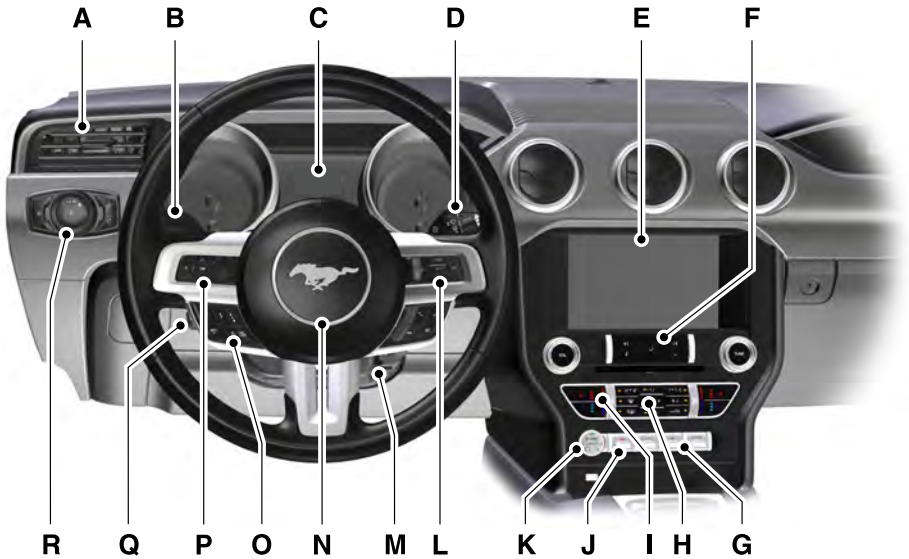


E177481

- A Gearshift lever. See **Transmission** (page 109).
- B Power window switches. See **Power Windows** (page 58).
- C Interior release lever. See **Locking and Unlocking** (page 40).
- D Head restraints. See **Head Restraints** (page 91).
- E Seatbelts. See **Fastening the Seatbelts** (page 21).
- F Rear seats. See **Rear Seats** (page 94).
- G Front seats. See **Seats** (page 91).
- H Hood release lever. See **Opening and Closing the Hood** (page 152).

# At a Glance

## INSTRUMENT PANEL OVERVIEW - LHD



E206023

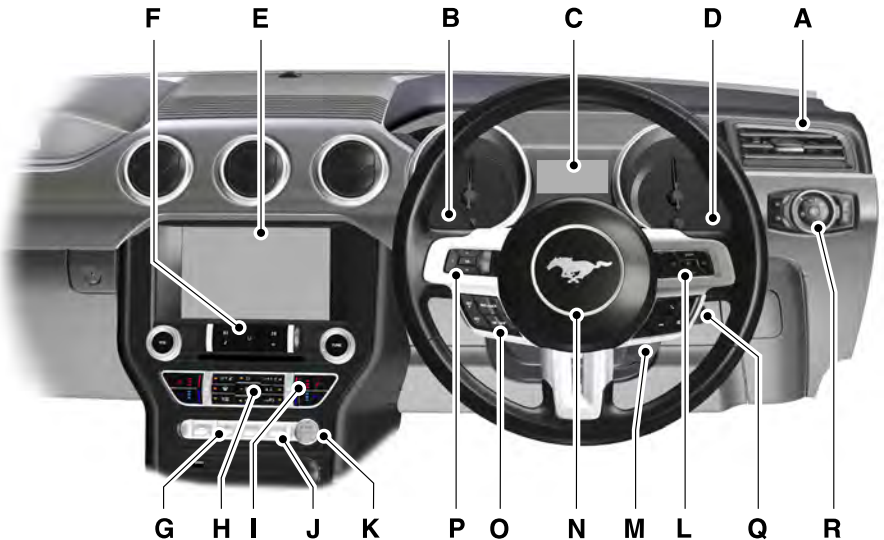
- A Air vents. See **Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate** (page 87).
- B Direction indicators. See **Direction Indicators** (page 57).
- C Instrument cluster. See **Gauges** (page 61).
- D Wiper lever. See **Wipers and Washers** (page 51).
- E Information and entertainment display. See **SYNC™ 2** (page 204).
- F Audio unit. See **Audio System** (page 199).
- G Drive control switches. See **Drive Control** (page 129).
- H Climate controls. See **Climate Control** (page 83).
- I Climate controlled seats. See **Climate Controlled Seats** (page 94).
- J Hazard flasher switch. See **Hazard Warning Flashers** (page 140).
- K Keyless start button. See **Keyless Starting** (page 98).
- L Audio control. See **Audio Control** (page 49).
- M Steering wheel adjustment. See **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** (page 49).



## At a Glance

- N Horn.
- O Cruise control switches. See **Cruise Control** (page 127).
- P Information display controls. See **Information Display Control** (page 50).
- Q Luggage compartment release button. See **Locking and Unlocking** (page 40).
- R Lighting control. See **Lighting** (page 53).

### INSTRUMENT PANEL OVERVIEW - RHD



E199408

- A Air vents. See **Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate** (page 87).
- B Direction indicators. See **Direction Indicators** (page 57).
- C Instrument cluster. See **Instrument Cluster** (page 61).
- D Wiper lever. See **Wipers and Washers** (page 51).
- E Information and entertainment display. See **SYNC™ 2** (page 204).
- F Audio unit. See **Audio System** (page 199).

## At a Glance

---

- G Drive control switches. See **Drive Control** (page 129).
- H Climate controls. See **Climate Control** (page 83).
- I Climate controlled seats. See **Climate Controlled Seats** (page 94).
- J Hazard flasher switch. See **Hazard Warning Flashers** (page 140).
- K Keyless start button. See **Keyless Starting** (page 98).
- L Audio control. See **Audio Control** (page 49).
- M Steering wheel adjustment. See **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** (page 49).
- N Horn.
- O Cruise control switches. See **Cruise Control** (page 127).
- P Information display controls. See **Information Display Control** (page 50).
- Q Luggage compartment release button.
- R Lighting control. See **Lighting Control** (page 53).

# Child Safety

## INSTALLING CHILD RESTRAINTS





E161855





E68916

### WARNINGS


 NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.


 Use an approved child seat to secure children less than 150 cm (59 in) tall on the rear seat.


 Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are fitting a child seat.

 Do not modify child seats in any way.

### WARNINGS

 Do not hold a child on your lap when the vehicle is moving.

 To avoid risk of injury, do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle.

 If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the child seats checked by an authorized dealer.

Only child seats certified to ECE-R44.03 or later have been tested and approved for use in your vehicle. A choice of child seats are available from authorized dealers.

**Note:** Mandatory use of child seats varies from country to country.

**Note:** Children should be properly restrained in a rear seating position whenever possible.

### Child Restraints for Different Mass Groups

Use the correct child restraint as follows:

#### Child Safety Seat



E68920

Secure children that weigh between 13 kg (29 lb) and 18 kg (40 lb) in a child safety seat (Group 1) on the rear seat.

# Child Safety

## Booster Seats

### WARNINGS

-  Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with only the lap strap of the safety belt.
-  Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with a safety belt that is slack or twisted.
-  Do not put the safety belt under your child's arm or behind your child's back.
-  Do not use pillows, books or towels to boost your child's height.
-  Make sure that your children sit in an upright position.
-  Make sure the child seat rests tightly against the vehicle seat. If necessary, adjust the seat backrest to an upright position. It may also be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint. See **Head Restraints** (page 91).
-  You must reinstall the head restraint following the removal of the child seat. See **Head Restraints** (page 91).

Secure children that weigh more than 15 kg (33 lb) but are less than 150 cm (59 in) tall in a booster seat or a booster cushion.

**Note:** *When using as child seat on a rear seat, adjust the front seat in a position to prevent contact with the rear passenger, child feet or child legs.*

## Booster Seat (Group 2)



E70710

We recommend that you use a booster seat that combines a cushion with a backrest instead of a booster cushion only. The raised seating position will allow you to position the shoulder strap of the adult safety belt over the center of your child's shoulder and the lap strap tightly across its hips.

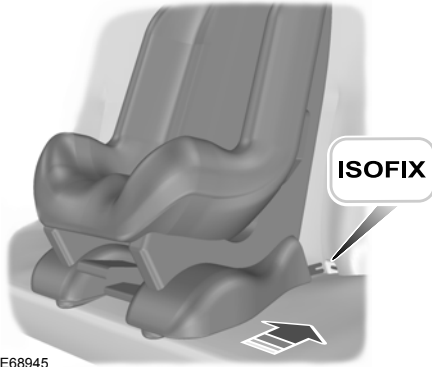
## Booster Cushion (Group 3)



E68924


# Child Safety

## ISOFIX Anchor Points



E68945

### WARNING

 Use an anti-rotation device when using the ISOFIX system. We recommend the use of a top tether or support leg.

Your vehicle has ISOFIX anchor points that accommodate universally approved ISOFIX child restraints.

The ISOFIX system comprises two rigid attachment arms on the child restraint that attach to anchor points on the outboard rear seats, where the cushion and backrest meet. Tether anchor points are located behind the outboard rear seats for child seats with a top tether.

**Note:** When you are purchasing an ISOFIX restraint, make sure that you know the correct mass group and ISOFIX size class for the intended seating locations. See **Child Restraint Positioning** (page 18).

## Top Tether Anchor Points




E174400

The top tether anchor points are located at the rear of the rear seat backrest.

## Attaching a Child Seat With Top Tethers

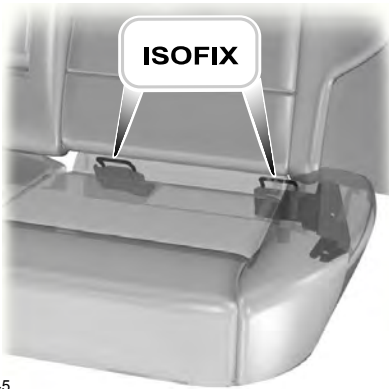
### WARNING

 Do not attach the top tether strap to anything other than the correct top tether strap anchor point.

Follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions for installing a child seat with a top tether.

1. Route the tether strap to the anchor point.

# Child Safety





E87145

2. Push the child seat back firmly to engage the ISOFIX lower anchor points.
3. Tighten the tether strap.

## Attaching a Child Seat With a Support Leg

### WARNINGS

-  Make sure the support leg is long enough to reach the vehicle floor.
-  Make sure that the child seat manufacturer lists your vehicle as suitable for use with this type of child seat.





Follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions for installing a child seat with a support leg.



E165606

## CHILD RESTRAINT POSITIONING

### WARNINGS

-  Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an air bag in front of it.
-  When using a child seat with a support leg, the support leg must rest securely on the floor.
-  When using a child seat with a seat belt, make sure that the seat belt is not slack or twisted.
-  The child seat must rest tightly against the vehicle seat. It may be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint. See **Head Restraints** (page 91).

# Child Safety

**Note:** When using a child seat on a front seat, always adjust the front passenger seat to its fully rearward position. If it proves difficult to tighten the lap section of the seat belt without slack remaining, adjust the seatback to the fully upright position and raise the height of the seat. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 91).

Seating positions	Mass group categories				
	0	0+	1	2	3
	Up to 10 kg	Up to 13 kg	9 - 18 kg	15 - 25 kg	22 - 36 kg
Front passenger seat	X	X	UF <sup>1</sup>	UF <sup>1</sup>	UF <sup>1</sup>
Rear seats	X	X	X	X	X

**X** Not suitable for children in this mass group.

**UF<sup>1</sup>** Suitable for universal category forward facing child restraints approved for use in this mass group. However, we recommend that you secure children in the rear seat.

The rear outboard passengers seating positions are equipped with ISOFIX lower anchors. All passenger rear outboard seating positions are equipped with ISOFIX upper anchors. See **Installing Child Restraints** (page 15).

The passenger front seat is not equipped with ISOFIX upper or lower anchors. We recommend that you secure children in the rear seat.

# Child Safety

## ISOFIX Child Seats

Seating positions		Mass group categories			
		0	0+	1	
		Rear facing		Forward facing	Rear facing
		Up to 29 lbs (13 kg)		20 - 40 lbs (9 - 18 kg)	
Front passenger seat	Size class	Not ISOFIX equipped			
	Seat type				
Rear outboard seat ISOFIX	Size class	X	B, B <sup>1</sup>	X	
	Seat type	IL	IL, IUF <sup>2</sup>	IL	

IL Suitable for particular ISOFIX child restraints systems of the semi-universal category. Please consult child restraints systems suppliers' vehicle recommendation lists.

IUF Suitable for ISOFIX forward facing child restraints systems of universal category approved for use in this mass group and ISOFIX size class.

<sup>1</sup>The ISOFIX size class for both universal and semi-universal child seat systems is defined by the capital letters A to G. These identification letters are displayed on the ISOFIX child seat.

<sup>2</sup>At time of publishing, the recommended Group 1 ISOFIX child seat is the Britax Romer Duo. See an authorized dealer for the latest details relating to our recommended child seats.



# Seatbelts

## FASTENING THE SEATBELTS

### WARNINGS



Insert the tongue into the buckle until you hear a distinct click. You have not fastened the safety belt correctly if you do not hear a click.



Make sure that your safety belt is securely stored away and is not outside your vehicle when closing the door.

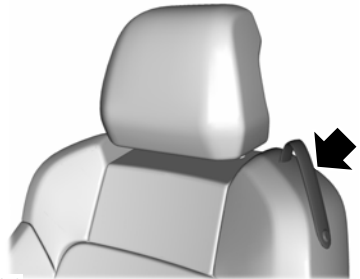
A web guide is included on the outboard side of the front seats. Depending on occupant size and seating position, you may need to route the belt through the guide for a proper fit. If the safety belt does not route across the middle of the shoulder, route the belt through the web guide.

### Convertible



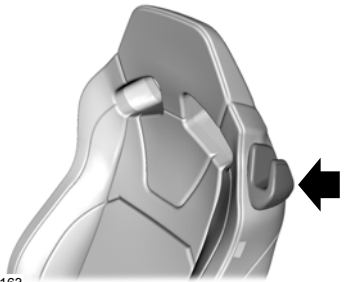
E175860

### Coupe

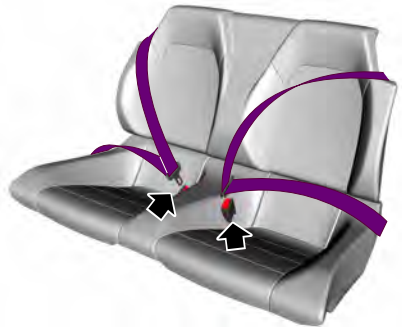


E175859

### Recaro



E175163



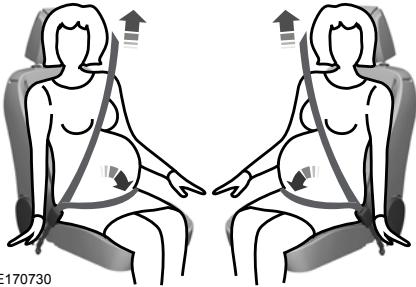
E204921

# Seatbelts

Pull the belt out steadily. It may lock if you pull it sharply or if your vehicle is on a slope.

Press the red button on the buckle to release the belt. Hold the tongue and let it retract completely and smoothly to its stowed position.

## Using Safety Belts During Pregnancy



### WARNING



Position the safety belt correctly for your safety and that of your unborn child. Do not use only the lap strap or the shoulder strap.

Pregnant women should always wear their safety belt. The lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort will allow. The shoulder belt should be positioned to cross the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest.

## SEATBELT REMINDER

### WARNING



The system will only provide protection when you use the seatbelt correctly.

The warning lamp illuminates and an audible warning will sound when the following conditions have been met:

- The front seatbelts have not been fastened.
- Your vehicle exceeds a relatively low speed.

It will also illuminate and sound if a front seatbelt is unfastened when your vehicle is moving.

If you do not fasten your seatbelt the warning switches off automatically after approximately five minutes.


## Turning the Seatbelt Reminder Off


Contact an authorized dealer.


# Supplementary Restraints System


## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION


### WARNINGS


 Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.


 Do not modify the front of your vehicle in any way. This could adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

 Wear a seatbelt and keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. Only when you use the seatbelt correctly, can it hold you in a position that allows the airbag to achieve its optimum effect. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 91). Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

 Repairs to the steering wheel, steering column, seats, airbags and seatbelts must be carried out by an authorized dealer. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

 Keep the areas in front of the airbags free from obstruction. Do not affix anything to or over the airbag covers. In the event of a crash, hard objects could cause serious personal injury or death.

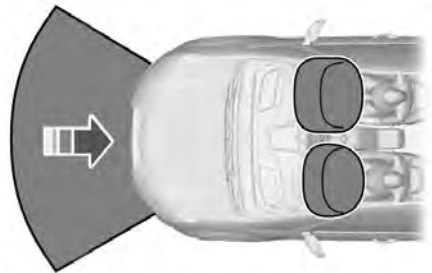
 Do not puncture the seat with sharp objects. This could damage and adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

 Use seat covers designed for seats with side airbags. Have these fitted by an authorized dealer. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

**Note:** You will hear a loud bang and see a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.

**Note:** Only wipe airbag covers with a damp cloth.

## DRIVER AIRBAG

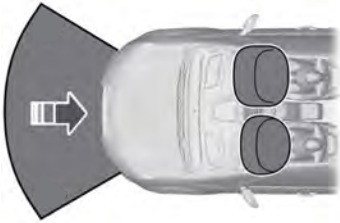


E74302

The airbag will deploy during significant frontal collisions. The airbag will inflate within a few thousandths of a second and deflate on contact with the occupant, thus cushioning forward body movement. During minor frontal collisions, overturns, rear collisions and side collisions, the airbag will not deploy.

# Supplementary Restraints System

## PASSENGER AIRBAG



E151127

The passenger airbag will deploy during significant frontal or near-frontal collisions. The airbag will inflate within a few thousandths of a second and deflate on contact with the occupant, thus cushioning forward body movement. During minor frontal collisions, overturns, rear collisions and side collisions, the front passenger airbag will not deploy.

## FRONT PASSENGER SENSING SYSTEM

### WARNINGS



Even with Advanced Restraints Systems, children 12 and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position. Failure to follow this could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.



Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it.

### WARNINGS



Sitting improperly out of position or with the seatback reclined too far can take off weight from the seat cushion and affect the decision of the front passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in a crash. Always sit upright against your seatback, with your feet on the floor.



To reduce the risk of possible serious injury: Do not stow objects in seatback map pocket or hang objects off seatback if a child is in the front passenger seat. Do not place objects underneath the front passenger seat or between the seat and the center console. Check the passenger airbag off indicator lamp for proper airbag status. Failure to follow these instructions may interfere with the front passenger sensing system.



Any alteration or modification to the front passenger seat may affect the performance of the front passenger sensing system.

This system works with sensors that are part of the front passenger seat and seatbelt to detect the presence of a properly-seated occupant and determine if the front passenger frontal airbag should be enabled (may inflate) or not.

PASSENGER  
AIRBAG

OFF

E179527

# Supplementary Restraints System

The front passenger sensing system uses a passenger airbag off indicator which will illuminate and stay lit to remind you that the front passenger frontal airbag is disabled.

The indicator lamp is located on the overhead console.

**Note:** *When the ignition is first tuned on, the indicator lamp will illuminate for a short period of time to confirm it is functional.*

The front passenger sensing system is designed to disable (will not inflate) the front passenger frontal airbag when a rear facing infant seat, a forward-facing child restraint, or a booster seat is detected. Even with this technology, parents are **strongly** encouraged to always properly restrain children in the rear seat. The sensor also turns off the passenger front airbag and seat-mounted side airbag when the passenger seat is empty.

- When the front passenger sensing system disables (will not inflate) the front passenger frontal airbag, the indicator lamp will illuminate and stay lit to remind you that the front passenger frontal airbag is disabled.
- If the child restraint has been installed and the indicator lamp is not lit, then turn the vehicle off, remove the child restraint from the vehicle and reinstall the restraint following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

The front passenger sensing system is designed to enable (may inflate) the front passenger frontal airbag anytime the system senses that a person of adult size is sitting properly in the front passenger seat.

- When the front passenger sensing system enables the front passenger frontal airbag (may inflate), the indicator lamp will be unlit and stay unlit.

If a person of adult size is sitting in the front passenger seat, but the airbag off indicator lamp is lit, it is possible that the person is not sitting properly in the seat. If this happens:

- Turn the vehicle off and ask the person to place the seatback in the full upright position.
- Have the person sit upright in the seat, centered on the seat cushion, with the person's legs comfortably extended.
- Restart the vehicle and have the person remain in this position for about two minutes. This will allow the system to detect that person and enable the passenger's frontal airbag.
- If the indicator lamp remains lit even after this, the person should be advised to ride in the rear seat.

Occupant	Passenger airbag OFF indicator	Passenger airbag
Empty	Unlit	Disabled
Child	Lit	Disabled
Adult	Unlit	Enabled

# Supplementary Restraints System

**Note:** *When the front passenger airbag off light is illuminated, the passenger (seat mounted) side airbag may be disabled to avoid the risk of airbag deployment injuries.*

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and put on seatbelts, it is very important that they continue to sit properly. A properly seated occupant sits upright, leaning against the seatback, and centered on the seat cushion, with their feet comfortably extended on the floor. Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury in a crash event. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

If you think that the status of the passenger airbag off indicator lamp is incorrect, check for the following:

- Objects lodged underneath the seat.
- Objects between the seat cushion and the center console.
- Objects hanging off the seatback.
- Objects stowed in the seatback map pocket.
- Objects placed on the occupant's lap.
- Cargo interference with the seat.
- Other passengers pushing or pulling on the seat.
- Rear passenger feet and knees resting or pushing on the seat.

The conditions listed above may cause the weight of a properly seated occupant to be incorrectly interpreted by the front passenger sensing system. The person in the front passenger seat may appear heavier or lighter due to the conditions described in the list above.



Make sure the front passenger sensing system is operating properly. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 28).

## If the airbag readiness light is lit, do the following:

The driver and adult passengers should check for objects lodged underneath the front passenger seat, or cargo interfering with the seat.

If there are lodged objects, or cargo is interfering with the seat, take the following steps to remove the obstruction:

- Pull the vehicle over.
- Turn the vehicle off.
- Driver and adult passengers should check for any objects lodged underneath the front passenger seat or cargo interfering with the seat.
- Remove the obstruction(s) (if found).
- Restart the vehicle.
- Wait at least two minutes and verify that the airbag readiness light is no longer illuminated.
- If the airbag readiness light remains illuminated, this may or may not be a problem due to the front passenger sensing system.

Do not attempt to repair or service the system. Take your vehicle immediately to an authorized dealer.

## SIDE AIRBAGS

### WARNING



Use seat covers designed for seats with side airbags. Have these fitted by an authorized dealer.

# Supplementary Restraints System

## Coupe



E152533

## Convertible



E174777

The airbags are located inside the seatback of the front seats. There is a label attached to the side of the seatback to indicate this.

## DRIVER AND PASSENGER KNEE AIRBAGS

### WARNINGS



Keep the glove box door closed while driving for optimal performance of the passenger knee airbag during a crash.



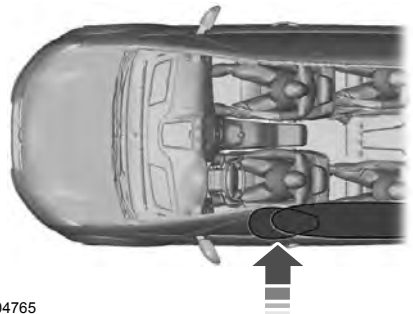
To reduce risk of injury, do not obstruct or place objects in the deployment path of the knee airbag.

A driver knee airbag is located under or within the instrument panel. A passenger knee airbag is located within the glove box door. During a crash, the restraints control module may activate the driver and passenger knee airbags based on crash severity and occupant conditions. Under certain crash and occupant conditions, the driver and passenger knee airbag may deploy but the driver front airbag may not activate. As with front and side airbags, it is important to be properly seated and restrained to reduce the risk of death or serious injury.



Make sure the knee airbags are operating properly. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 28).

## SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAGS - COUPE



E204765

The airbags are located over the front and rear side windows.

The airbags will deploy during significant side crashes or when a certain likelihood of a rollover event is detected by the rollover sensor. The side curtain airbags may deploy in significant frontal angled crashes.

# Supplementary Restraints System

## CRASH SENSORS AND AIRBAG INDICATOR

### WARNING



Modifying or adding equipment to the front end of the vehicle (including hood, frame, bumper system, front end body structure, tow hooks and hood pins) may affect the performance of the airbag system and deployable hood system, increasing the risk of injury. Do not modify the front end of the vehicle.

Your vehicle has a collection of crash, occupant and pedestrian sensors which provide information to the restraints control module. The restraints control module deploys (activates) the front seatbelt pretensioners, driver airbag, passenger airbag, knee airbag(s), seat mounted side airbags, side curtain airbags and deployable hood system (for pedestrian protection). Based on the type of crash (frontal impact, side impact, rollover or pedestrian impact), the restraints control module will deploy the appropriate safety devices.

The restraints control module also monitors the readiness of the above safety devices plus the crash, occupant and pedestrian sensors. The readiness of the safety system is indicated by a warning indicator light in the instrument cluster or by a backup tone if the warning light is not working. Routine maintenance of the airbags and deployable hood system is not required.

A difficulty with the system is indicated by one or more of the following:



The readiness light will not illuminate immediately after the ignition is turned on.

- The readiness light will either flash or stay lit.
- A series of five beeps will be heard. The tone pattern will repeat periodically until the problem, the light or both are repaired.

If any of these things happen, even intermittently, have the supplemental restraint system and deployable hood system serviced at an authorized dealer immediately. Unless serviced, the system may not function properly in the event of a crash.

The seatbelt pretensioners and the front airbag supplemental restraint system are designed to activate when the vehicle sustains frontal deceleration sufficient to cause the restraints control module to deploy a safety device.

The fact that the seatbelt pretensioners or front airbags did not activate for both front seat occupants in a crash, or the deployable hood system did not activate in a pedestrian crash does not mean that something is wrong with the system. Rather, it means the restraints control module determined the accident conditions (crash severity, belt usage) were not appropriate to activate these safety devices.

- The design of the front airbags is to activate only in frontal and near-frontal crashes (not rollovers, side impacts or rear impacts unless the crash causes sufficient frontal deceleration).
- The seatbelt pretensioners are designed to activate in frontal, near-frontal and side crashes.
- The knee airbag(s) may deploy based on crash severity and occupant conditions.



# Supplementary Restraints System







---

- The design of the side airbags is to inflate in certain side crashes. The design of the side curtain airbags is to inflate in certain side impact crashes and when a certain likelihood of rollover is detected by the rollover sensor. Side airbags and the side curtain airbags may activate in other types of crashes if the vehicle experiences sufficient sideways motion or deformation, or rollover likelihood.
- The deployable hood system is designed to activate in a pedestrian impact between the speeds of about 20 km/h (12 mph) and 50 km/h (31 mph). Events similar to a pedestrian impact may deploy the hood system. See **Pedestrian Protection** (page 30).

# Pedestrian Protection

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

### WARNINGS

-  Do not drive your vehicle if the hood has been deployed.
-  Do not place your hand or objects or mount equipment on or near the hood lifters that may come into contact with a deploying hood lifter. Failure to follow these instructions may cause serious injury during a deployment.
-  Do not attempt to service, repair or modify the hood lifters as you could be seriously injured or killed. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.
-  Do not attempt to service, repair or modify the hood hinges as you could compromise the deployable hood system. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.
-  If the deployable hood system has deployed, the system will not function again. The deployable hood system including the hood, hinges, hood lifters, bumper system and crash sensors must be inspected and serviced by an authorized dealer.
-  Modifying or adding equipment to the front end of your vehicle (including hood, bumper system, frame, front end body structure, tow hooks and hood pins) may affect the performance of the deployable hood system, increasing the risk of injury. Do not modify or add equipment to the front end of your vehicle.

Your vehicle is equipped with an enhanced pedestrian protection system in the event of a pedestrian impact. The bumper includes energy absorbing material in its construction, and sensors that can detect a pedestrian impact and trigger a deployable hood system.

## Deployable Hood System



E94698

The system releases the hood hinges and raises the rear edge of the hood by about 100 mm (4 in). This increases the gap between the hood and the components within the engine compartment to provide additional cushioning in case the pedestrian makes contact with the hood.

The deployable hood system consists of:

- Hood.
- Hood hinges.
- Hood lifters located near the hood hinges.
- Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 28).
- Deployable hood system caution labels placed under the hood near the hood lifters to show their location for service and emergency personnel.

# Pedestrian Protection



E199514

These labels show the location of the hood lifters for service and emergency personnel.

The deployable hood system is active only when the ignition is on and the vehicle is driven between the speeds of about 20 km/h (12 mph) and 50 km/h (31 mph).

## After Deployment

After an impact that has activated the deployable hood system, the deployable hood system will be raised and remains permanently attached to the vehicle, by the hood hinges and latch. The vehicle should not be driven when the hood has been deployed. If the deployable hood system has been activated, stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, and transport the vehicle to the nearest authorized dealer.



If the readiness lamp lights stays on, the vehicle should be transported to the nearest authorized dealer.

The hood can be opened using the hood latch after the deployable hood has been triggered. Make sure the hood is securely closed and latched before transporting the vehicle to the nearest authorized dealer.

## Deployable Hood Monitoring System

The deployable hood system does not require routine maintenance.



If a fault is detected in the system, the monitoring system will turn on the readiness indicator in the instrument cluster.

## If the readiness lamp is lit, do the following:

Do not attempt to repair or service the system. Take your vehicle immediately to an authorized dealer.

If the deployable hood system activates, we recommend that these parts be replaced:

- The hood.
- Hood hinges.
- Hood lifters.

These parts should be inspected by an authorized dealer and replaced if necessary:

- Crash sensors.
- Bumper and energy absorbing material.

## Hood Lifter Disposal

Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Hood lifters must be disposed of by qualified personnel.

# Keys and Remote Controls

## GENERAL INFORMATION ON RADIO FREQUENCIES

**Note:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

The typical operating range for your transmitter is approximately 10 m (33 ft).

A decrease in operating range could be caused by:

- weather conditions
- nearby radio towers
- structures around your vehicle
- other vehicles parked next to your vehicle.

The radio frequency used by your remote control can also be used by other radio transmitters, for example amateur radios, medical equipment, wireless headphones, wireless remote controls, cell phones, battery chargers and alarm systems. If the frequencies are jammed, you will not be able to use your remote control. You can lock and unlock the doors with the key.

**Note:** Make sure your vehicle is locked before leaving it unattended.

**Note:** If you are in range, the remote control will operate if you press any button unintentionally.

**Note:** The remote control contains sensitive electrical components. Exposure to moisture or impact may cause permanent damage.

## REMOTE CONTROL

### Intelligent Access Key



E186183

Your intelligent access keys operate the power locks. The key must be in your vehicle to use the push button start.

### Removable Key Blade

The intelligent access key also contains a removable key blade that you can use to unlock your vehicle.



E151796

Slide the release on the back of the remote control and pivot the cover off to access the key blade.

# Keys and Remote Controls



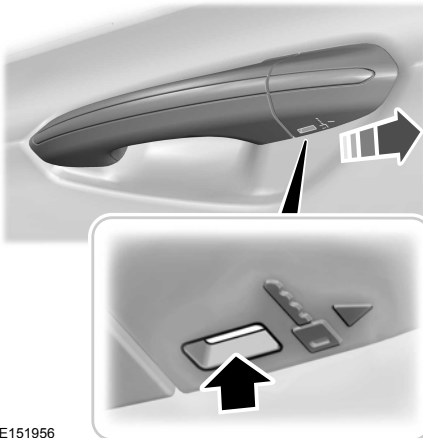
E151795

**Note:** Your vehicle keys came with a security label that provides important key cut information. Keep the label in a safe place for future reference.

## Using the Key Blade

The key cylinder is under a cap on the driver door handle.

To remove the cap:



E151956

1. Insert the key blade into the slot on the bottom of the handle and press up.
2. While maintaining upward pressure, move the cap rearward to release it. Gently remove the key while doing so.

To install the cap:



E151957

1. Place the cap just forward of the key cylinder.
2. While applying pressure to the cap, move it forward until it is in place. You may hear a snap as it engages.

Make sure you have correctly installed the cap by trying to move it rearward.

## Changing the Remote Control Battery

**Note:** Refer to local regulations when disposing of transmitter batteries.

**Note:** Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.

**Note:** Replacing the battery does not erase the programmed key from your vehicle. The transmitter should operate normally.

A message appears in the information display when the remote control battery is low. See **Information Messages** (page 75).

## Intelligent Access Key

The remote control uses two coin-type three-volt lithium batteries CR2025 or equivalent.

# Keys and Remote Controls



E151796

1. Slide the release on the back of the remote control and pivot the cover off.

**Note:** Make sure to replace the label between the two batteries.

5. Reinstall the battery cover.

## REPLACING A LOST KEY OR REMOTE CONTROL

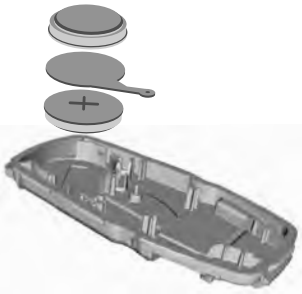
You can purchase replacement keys or remote controls from an authorized dealer. Authorized dealers can program remote controls for your vehicle. See **Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control** (page 34).

To re-program the passive anti-theft system see an authorized dealer.



E153890

2. Insert a coin into the slot and twist to separate the housing.



E176226

3. Remove the batteries.
4. Install new batteries with the + facing each other.

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

MyKey allows you to program keys with restricted driving modes to promote good driving habits. All but one of the keys programmed to the vehicle can be activated with these restricted modes.

Any keys that have not been programmed are referred to as administrator keys or admin keys. These can be used to:

- Create a MyKey.
- Program configurable MyKey settings.
- Clear all MyKey features.

When you have programmed a MyKey, you can access the following information using the information display:

- How many admin keys and MyKeys are programmed to your vehicle.
- The total distance your vehicle has traveled using a MyKey.

**Note:** *All MyKeys are programmed to the same settings. You cannot program them individually.*

**Note:** *For vehicles with intelligent access with push-button start, when both a MyKey and an admin intelligent access key fob are present, the admin fob will be recognized by the vehicle while switching the ignition on to start the vehicle.*

## Non-configurable Settings

The following settings cannot be changed by an admin key user:

- Seatbelt reminder. You cannot disable this feature. The audio system will mute when the front seat passengers' seatbelts are not fastened.
- Early low fuel. The low-fuel warning activates earlier, giving the MyKey user more time to refuel.

- Driver assist features, if equipped on your vehicle, are forced on: rear parking aid, blind spot information system, cross traffic alert, lane departure warning, collision warning system and navigation.
- Track Mode, if your vehicle is equipped with this feature, is restricted.

## Configurable Settings

With an admin key, you can configure certain MyKey settings when you first create a MyKey and before you recycle the key or restart the vehicle. You can also change the settings afterward with an admin key.

- A vehicle speed limit can be set. Warnings will be shown in the display followed by an audible tone when your vehicle reaches the set speed. You cannot override the set speed by fully depressing the accelerator pedal or by setting cruise control.

### WARNING



Do not set MyKey maximum speed limit to a limit that will prevent the driver from maintaining a safe speed considering posted speed limits and prevailing road conditions. The driver is always responsible to drive in accordance with local laws and prevailing conditions. Failure to do so could result in accident or injury.

---

- Various vehicle speed minders can be set. Once you select a speed, it will be shown in the display, followed by an audible tone when the preselected vehicle speed is exceeded.
- Audio system maximum volume of 45%. A message will be shown in the display when you attempt to exceed the limited volume. Also, the speed-sensitive or compensated automatic volume control will be disabled.
- Always on setting. When this is selected, you will not be able to turn off traction control, emergency assist, do not disturb (if your vehicle is equipped with these features), and Sport Mode will not be available to MyKey drivers.

## CREATING A MYKEY

Use the information display to create a MyKey:

1. Insert the key you want to program into the ignition. If your vehicle is equipped with a push-button start, place the remote control into the backup slot. The location of your backup slot is in another chapter. See **Starting a Gasoline Engine** (page 99).
2. Switch the ignition on.
3. Access the main menu on the information display controls. Use the arrow keys to get to the following menu selections:

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button or the right arrow key.
MyKey	Press the <b>OK</b> button or the right arrow key.
Create MyKey	Press the <b>OK</b> button or the right arrow key.

When prompted, hold the **OK** button until you see a message informing you to label this key as a MyKey. The key will be restricted at the next start.

MyKey is successfully created. Make sure you label it so you can distinguish it from the admin keys.

You can also program configurable settings for the key(s). See **Programming/Changing Configurable Settings**.

## Programming/Changing Configurable Settings

Use the information display to access your configurable MyKey settings.

1. Switch the ignition on using an admin key or remote control.
2. Access the main menu on the information display controls. Use the arrow keys to get to the following menu selections:

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button or the right arrow key.
MyKey	Press the <b>OK</b> button or the right arrow key.



# MyKey™

**Note:** You can clear or change your MyKey settings at any time during the same key cycle as you created the MyKey. Once you have switched the vehicle off, however, you will need an admin key to change or clear your MyKey settings.

## CLEARING ALL MYKEYS

You can clear or change your MyKey settings using the information display control on the steering wheel. See **Information Displays** (page 67).

Switch the ignition on using an admin key or remote control.

**To clear all MyKeys of all MyKey settings, press the left arrow button to access the main menu and scroll to:**

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
MyKey	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Clear MyKey	Press and hold the <b>OK</b> button until the following message displays.
All MyKeys Cleared	

**Note:** When you clear your MyKeys, you remove all restrictions and return all MyKeys to their original admin key status.

## CHECKING MYKEY SYSTEM STATUS

You can find information on programmed MyKey(s) using the information display control on the steering wheel. See **Information Displays** (page 67).

**To find information on programmed MyKey(s), press the left arrow button to access the main menu and scroll to:**

Message	Description
Settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
MyKey	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
<b>Select one of the following:</b>	
MyKey Dist.	Tracks the distance when drivers use a MyKey. The only way to delete the accumulated distance is by using an admin key to clear your MyKeys. If the distance does not accumulate as expected, then the intended user is not using the MyKey, or an admin key user recently cleared and then recreated a MyKey.
{0} MyKeys	Indicates the number of MyKeys programmed to your vehicle. Use this feature to detect how many MyKeys you have for your vehicle and determine when a MyKey has been deleted.
{0} Admin Keys	Indicates how many admin keys are programmed to your vehicle. Use this feature to determine how many unrestricted keys you have for your vehicle, and detect if an additional MyKey has been programmed.

## USING MYKEY WITH REMOTE START SYSTEMS

MyKey is not compatible with non

Ford-approved, aftermarket remote start systems. If you choose to install a remote start system, see an authorized dealer for a Ford-approved remote start system.

## MYKEY TROUBLESHOOTING

Condition	Potential Causes
I cannot create a MyKey.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The key or transmitter used to start the vehicle does not have admin privileges.</li> <li>• The key or transmitter used to start the vehicle is the only admin key (there always has to be at least one admin key).</li> <li>• Vehicles with keyless start: The keyless start transmitter is not placed in the backup position. See <b>Starting and Stopping the Engine</b> (page 98).</li> <li>• SecuriLock passive anti-theft system is disabled.</li> </ul>
I cannot program the configurable settings.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The key or transmitter used to start your vehicle does not have admin privileges.</li> <li>• No MyKeys are created. See <b>Creating a MyKey</b> (page 36).</li> </ul>
I cannot clear the MyKeys.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The key or transmitter used to start your vehicle does not have admin privileges.</li> <li>• No MyKeys are created. See <b>Creating a MyKey</b> (page 36).</li> </ul>
I lost the only admin key.	Purchase a new key from an authorized dealer.
I lost a key.	Contact an authorized dealer.
MyKey distances do not accumulate.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The MyKey user is not using the MyKey.</li> <li>• An admin key holder cleared the MyKeys and created new MyKeys.</li> <li>• The key system has been reset.</li> </ul>
No MyKey functions with the keyless entry transmitter.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• An admin transmitter is present at vehicle start.</li> <li>• No MyKeys are created. See <b>Creating a MyKey</b> (page 36).</li> </ul>

# Locks

## LOCKING AND UNLOCKING

You can use the power door lock control or the remote control to lock and unlock your vehicle.

### Power Door Locks

The power door lock control is on the driver and front passenger door panels.



E180791

- A Unlock.
- B Lock.

### Door Lock Indicator

An LED on each door window trim illuminates when you lock the door. It remains on for up to 10 minutes after you switch the ignition off.

### Door Lock Switch Inhibitor

When you electronically lock your vehicle, the power door lock switch no longer operates after 20 seconds. You must unlock your vehicle with the remote control, or switch the ignition on to restore function to these switches. You can switch this feature on or off in the information display. See (page 67).

### Remote Control

You can use the remote control at any time.

**Note:** The luggage compartment release button only works when your vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h (5 mph).

### Unlocking the Doors



Press the button to unlock all doors. The direction indicators will flash.

**Note:** The driver door can be unlocked with the key if the remote control is not functioning.

**Note:** When you leave your vehicle unattended for several weeks, the remote control turns off. Your vehicle must be unlocked and the engine started using the key. Unlocking and starting your vehicle once enables the remote control.

### Reprogramming the Unlocking Function

You can reprogram the unlocking function so that only the driver door is unlocked.

Press and hold both the lock and unlock buttons on the remote control for three seconds to change between driver door or all doors unlock mode. The direction indicators will flash twice to indicate a change to the unlocking mode. Driver door unlock mode only unlocks the driver door when you press the unlock button once. All door unlock mode unlocks all doors when you press the unlock button once. The unlocking mode applies to the remote control. You can also change between the unlocking modes using the information display. See (page 67).

### Locking the Doors



Press the button to lock all doors. The direction indicators will flash.

**Note:** If any door or the luggage compartment is open, or if the hood is open on vehicles that have an anti-theft alarm or remote start, the direction indicators will not flash.

# Locks

## Double Locking the Doors

### WARNING



Do not use double locking when passengers or animals are inside your vehicle. The doors cannot be unlocked or opened from the inside when double locked.

Double locking is a theft protection feature that prevents someone from opening the doors from the inside. It will only operate if all of the doors are fully closed.



Press the button twice within three seconds.

## Auto Relock

The doors automatically relock if you do not open a door within 45 seconds of unlocking the doors with the remote control. The door locks and the alarm return to their previous state. You can switch this feature on or off in the information display. See (page 67).

## Locking and Unlocking the Doors From Inside

Use the power door lock control located on the driver and front passenger door panels.

## Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key Blade

### Locking the Doors



E180643

If the central locking function does not operate, lock the doors individually using the key in the position shown.

### *Left-Hand Side*

Turn clockwise to lock.

### *Right-Hand Side*

Turn counterclockwise to lock.

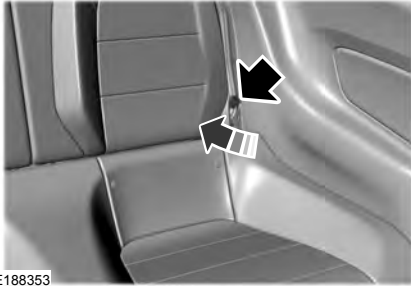
## Unlocking the Doors

If the central locking function does not operate, unlock the driver door and then unlock all other doors individually by pulling the interior door handles.

# Locks

**Note:** If the doors have been unlocked using this method, the doors must be locked individually until the central locking function has been repaired.

## Unlocking the Luggage Compartment (Convertible Only)



E188353

If the power luggage compartment decklid does not operate because the battery has no charge, do the following:

1. Pull the left-hand side rear seat backrest cushion aside.
2. Insert the key blade into the key slot.
3. Turn the key to release the luggage compartment.

## Opening the Luggage Compartment

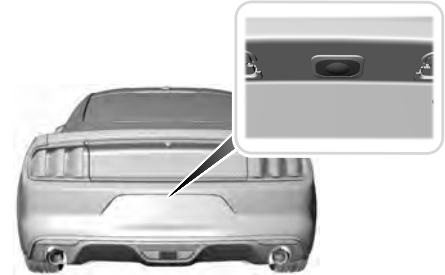
### From Inside Your Vehicle



E188015

Press the button on the instrument panel to open the luggage compartment.

### From Outside Your Vehicle



E175208

Press the release button above the license plate to unlatch the luggage compartment. Your vehicle must be unlocked or have an intelligent access key within 1 m (3 ft) of the luggage compartment.

### With the Remote Control



Press twice within three seconds to open the luggage compartment.

## KEYLESS ENTRY

### General Information

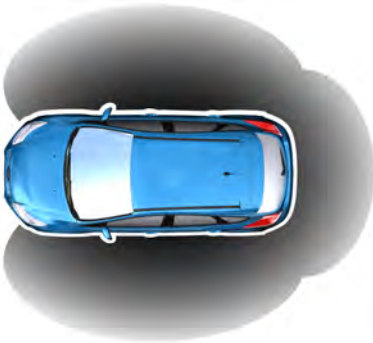
The system will not function if:

- Your vehicle battery has no charge.
- The key battery has no charge.
- The passive key frequencies are jammed.

**Note:** If the system does not function, use the key blade to lock and unlock your vehicle. See **Remote Control** (page 32).

The system allows you to unlock, operate and lock your vehicle without using a key or remote control.

# Locks



E78276

Passive locking and unlocking requires a valid passive key to be located within one of the three external detection ranges. These are located approximately 1.5 m (5 ft) from the front door handles and the luggage compartment.

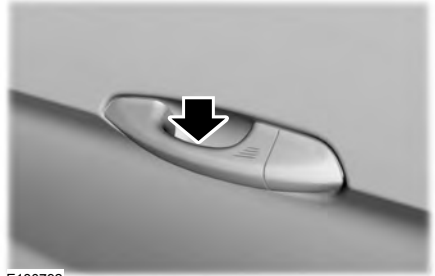
**Note:** The system may not function if the passive key is close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.

## Passive Key

Your vehicle can be locked and unlocked using the passive key. You can also use the passive key as a remote control to lock and unlock your vehicle. See **Locking and Unlocking** (page 40).

## Locking Your Vehicle

**Note:** Your vehicle does not automatically lock. If you do not touch a locking sensor your vehicle will remain unlocked.



E180792

Touch the top of the door handle to lock your vehicle. There is a brief delay before you can unlock your vehicle again.

**Note:** Keep the door handle clean to make sure the system operates correctly.

**Note:** Your vehicle will remain locked for approximately one second. When the delay period is over, you can open the doors again, provided the passive key is within the respective detection range.

When you lock your vehicle, the direction indicators will flash twice to confirm your vehicle has locked and the alarm is armed.

## Unlocking Your Vehicle

Pull an exterior door handle to unlock and open the door. Do not touch the lock sensor on the front of the handle.

**Note:** A passive key must be located within the detection range.

When you unlock your vehicle, the direction indicators will flash once to confirm your vehicle has unlocked and the alarm has disarmed.

## Unlocking Only the Driver Door

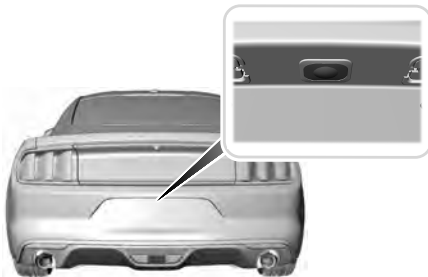
You can program the system so that only the driver door is unlocked. See **Locking and Unlocking** (page 40).

# Locks

If the unlocking function is reprogrammed so that only the driver door is unlocked the following will occur:

- If the driver door is the first door opened, the passenger door will remain locked. The passenger door can be unlocked from inside your vehicle by pressing the unlock button located on the driver and passenger door panels. You can unlock the doors individually by pulling the interior door handle on those doors.
- If the passenger door is the first door opened, the driver door will also unlock.

## At the Luggage Compartment



E175208

Press the exterior release button hidden above the license plate.

**Note:** A passive key must be located within the detection range.

## Disabled Passive Keys

Passive keys left inside your vehicle when locked are disabled.

You cannot use a disabled passive key to switch the ignition on.

You must enable all passive keys again to use them. To enable all your passive keys, unlock your vehicle using a valid passive key. You will reactivate disabled passive keys when you switch the ignition on using a valid key.

**Note:** You can still start your vehicle when the passive key is in the back-up position. See **Keyless Starting** (page 98).

## Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key Blade



E151796

Slide the release on the back of the remote control and pivot the cover off to access the key blade. See **Remote Control** (page 32).

**Note:** Only the driver door handle has a lock cylinder.



## PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

### Principle of Operation

The system prevents someone from starting the engine with an incorrectly coded key.

**Note:** *Do not leave correctly coded keys in the vehicle. Always take your keys and lock all doors when leaving the vehicle.*

### Coded Keys

If you lose a key, you can obtain a replacement from an authorized dealer. If possible, provide them with the key number from the tag provided with the original keys. You can also obtain extra keys from an authorized dealer.

**Note:** *Have all of your remaining keys erased and recoded if you lose a key. Have replacement keys coded together with recoding your remaining keys. See an authorized dealer for further information.*

**Note:** *Do not shield your keys with metal objects. This may prevent the receiver from recognizing a coded key.*

### Arming the Engine Immobilizer

When you switch the ignition off the engine immobilizer will arm automatically after a short time.

### Disarming the Engine Immobilizer

When you switch the ignition on the engine immobilizer will disarm automatically if a correctly coded key is used.

If you are unable to start your vehicle with a correctly coded key, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

## ANTI-THEFT ALARM - VEHICLES WITH: PERIMETER ALARM

The perimeter alarm is a deterrent against unauthorized access to your vehicle through the doors and the hood. It also protects the audio unit.

If the alarm is triggered, the alarm horn will sound and the hazard warning flasher will flash.

Take all remote controls to an authorized dealer if there is any potential alarm problem with your vehicle.

### Arming the Alarm

To arm the alarm, lock your vehicle. See **Locks** (page 40).

### Disarming the Alarm

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors and switching your vehicle on or unlocking the doors with the remote control.

**Note:** *A valid passive key must be located within the detection range of that door for keyless entry. See **Keyless Entry** (page 42).*

## ANTI-THEFT ALARM - VEHICLES WITH: INTERIOR SENSOR

### Alarm System

#### WARNING



Do not arm the alarm with full guard if passengers, animals or other moving objects are inside your vehicle.

---

# Security

## Perimeter Alarm

The perimeter alarm is a deterrent against unauthorized access to your vehicle through the doors and the hood. It also protects the audio unit.

## Interior Sensors

The interior lamp unit sensors are located in the overhead console.

**Note:** Do not cover up the interior lamp unit sensors.

The sensors act as a deterrent against unauthorized intrusion by sensing any movement inside your vehicle.

## Triggering the Alarm

Once armed, the alarm is triggered in any of the following ways:

- If someone opens a door, the liftgate or the hood without a valid key or remote control.
- If someone removes the audio unit or navigation system.
- If you switch your vehicle on without a correctly coded key.
- If the interior sensors detect movement within your vehicle.

## Using the information display controls, scroll to:

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Vehicle settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Alarm	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Ask on exit	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Reduced guard	Appears in the information display each time you switch your vehicle off. If you wish to arm the alarm with reduced guard, press the <b>OK</b> button when this message appears.

If the alarm is triggered, the alarm horn will sound for 30 seconds and the hazard warning flasher will flash for five minutes.

Any further attempts to perform one of the above will trigger the alarm again.

## Full and Reduced Guard

### Full Guard

Full guard is the standard setting.

In full guard, the interior sensors are on when you arm the alarm.

### Reduced Guard

In reduced guard, the interior sensors are off when you arm the alarm.

## Selecting Full or Reduced Guard

You can select full or reduced guard using the information display. See **General Information** (page 67).

## Ask on Exit (If Equipped)

You can set the information display to ask you each time which level of guard you wish to set.

# Security

Message	Action and Description
	If you wish to arm the alarm with full guard, leave your vehicle without pressing the <b>OK</b> button.

**Note:** *Selecting reduced guard does not set the alarm permanently to reduced guard. It sets it to reduced guard only for the current locking cycle.*

## Arming the Alarm

To arm the alarm, lock your vehicle. See **Locks** (page 40).

## Disarming the Alarm

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors and switching your vehicle on or unlocking the doors with the remote control.

**Note:** *A valid passive key must be located within the detection range of that door for keyless entry. See **Keyless Entry** (page 42).*

## ANTI-THEFT ALARM - VEHICLES WITH: INTEGRAL BATTERY

### Alarm System

#### WARNING



Do not arm the alarm with full guard if passengers, animals or other moving objects are inside your vehicle.

### Perimeter Alarm

The perimeter alarm is a deterrent against unauthorized access to your vehicle through the doors and the hood.

### Interior Sensors

The interior lamp unit sensors are located in the overhead console.

**Note:** *Do not cover up the interior lamp unit sensors.*

The sensors act as a deterrent against unauthorized access by sensing any movement within your vehicle.

### Battery Back-up Sounder

The battery back-up sounder is an additional alarm system, which sounds a siren if your vehicle battery or the battery back-up sounder is disconnected. When you lock your vehicle the system is armed. The sounder has its own battery and will sound an alarm siren even if someone disconnects your vehicle battery or the battery back-up sounder itself.

### Triggering the Alarm

Once armed, the alarm is triggered in any of the following ways:

- If someone opens a door, the liftgate or the hood without a valid key or remote control.
- If someone removes the audio or navigation system.
- If you switch your vehicle on without a correctly coded key.
- If the interior sensors detect movement within your vehicle.
- On vehicles with a battery back-up sounder, if someone disconnects your vehicle battery or the battery back-up sounder itself.

If the alarm is triggered, the alarm horn will sound for 30 seconds and the hazard warning flasher will flash for five minutes.

# Security

Any further attempts to perform one of the above sounds the alarm again.

## Full and Reduced Guard

### Full Guard

Full guard is the standard setting.

In full guard, the interior sensors are on when you arm the alarm.

### Reduced Guard

In reduced guard, the interior sensors are off when you arm the alarm.

## Selecting Full or Reduced Guard

You can select full or reduced guard using the information display. See **General Information** (page 67).

### Ask on Exit (If Equipped)

You can set the information display to ask you each time which level of guard you wish to set.

## Using the information display controls, scroll to:

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Vehicle settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Alarm	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Ask on exit	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Reduced	Appears in the information display each time you switch your vehicle off. If you wish to arm the alarm with reduced guard, press the <b>OK</b> button when this message appears. If you wish to arm the alarm with full guard, leave your vehicle without pressing the <b>OK</b> button.

**Note:** *Selecting reduced guard does not set the alarm permanently to reduced guard. It sets it to reduced guard only for the current locking cycle.*

## Arming the Alarm

To arm the alarm, lock your vehicle. See **Locks** (page 40).

## Disarming the Alarm

**Note:** *A valid passive key must be located within the detection range of that door for keyless entry. See **Keyless Entry** (page 42).*

## Perimeter Alarm

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors and switching your vehicle on or unlocking the doors with the remote control.

## Category One Alarm

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors and switching your vehicle on within 12 seconds or unlocking the doors or the liftgate with the remote control.

# Steering Wheel

## ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL

### WARNING



Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving.

**Note:** Make sure that you sit in the correct position. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 91).



E176634

1. Unlock the steering column.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.

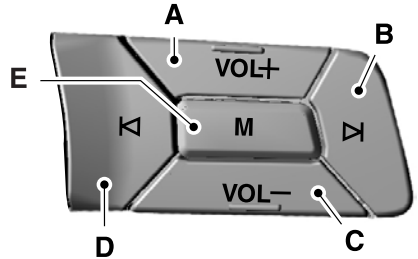


E176635

3. Lock the steering column.

## AUDIO CONTROL

You can operate the following functions with the control:



E174583

- A Volume up.
- B Seek up or next.
- C Volume down.
- D Seek down or previous.
- E Media.

## MEDIA

Press repeatedly to scroll through available audio sources.

### Seek, Next or Previous

Press the seek button to:

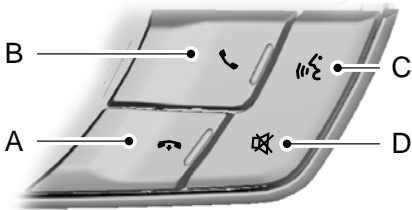
- Tune the radio to the next or previous stored preset.
- Play the next or the previous track.

Press and hold the seek button to:

- Tune the radio to the next station up or down the frequency band.
- Seek or fast forward through a track.

# Steering Wheel

## VOICE CONTROL

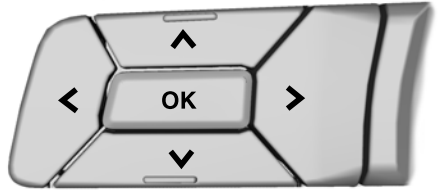


E174584

- A End a call.
- B Answer a call.
- C Voice recognition.
- D Mute.

See your SYNC information.

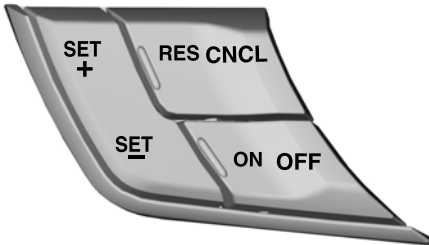
## INFORMATION DISPLAY CONTROL



E174595

See **Information Displays** (page 67).

## CRUISE CONTROL



E174594

See **Cruise Control** (page 127).

# Wipers and Washers

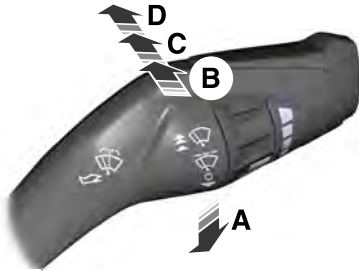
## WINDSHIELD WIPERS

**Note:** Fully defrost the windshield before switching on the windshield wipers.

**Note:** Make sure you switch off the windshield wipers before entering a car wash.

**Note:** Clean the windshield and wiper blades if they begin to leave streaks or smears. If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades.

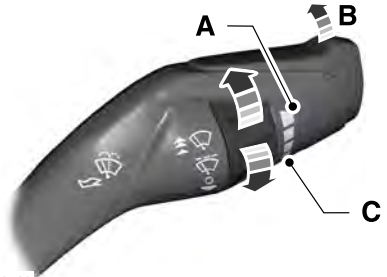
**Note:** Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. This may scratch the glass, damage the wiper blades or cause the wiper motor to burn out. Always use the windshield washers before wiping a dry windshield.



E173728

- A Single wipe
- B Intermittent wipe
- C Normal wipe
- D High speed wipe

## Intermittent Wipe



E173729

- A Shortest wipe interval
- B Intermittent wipe
- C Longest wipe interval

Use the rotary control to adjust the intermittent wipe interval.

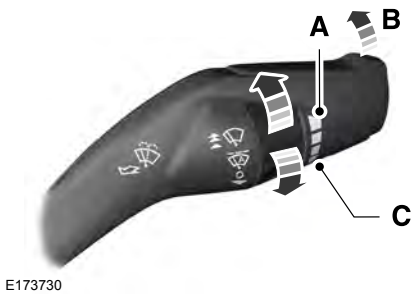
## Speed Dependent Wipers

When your vehicle speed increases, the interval between wipes will decrease.

## AUTOWIPERS

The feature uses a rain sensor. You will find it in the area around the interior mirror. The rain sensor monitors the amount of moisture on the windshield and automatically turns on the wipers. It adjusts the wiper speed by the amount of moisture that the sensor detects on the windshield. You can switch this feature on and off in the information display. See (page 67).

# Wipers and Washers



E173730

- A Highest sensitivity
- B On
- C Lowest sensitivity

Use the rotary control to adjust the sensitivity of the rain sensor. There are six sensitivity settings. When you set the control to low sensitivity (the first position), the wipers turn on when there is a large amount of moisture on the windshield. When you set the control to high sensitivity (the sixth position), the wipers will turn on when there is a small amount of moisture on the windshield.

Keep the outside of the windshield clean. The rain sensor is very sensitive. If the area around the mirror is dirty, then the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or insects hit the windshield.

Wet or winter driving conditions with ice, snow or salty road mist can cause inconsistent and unexpected wiping or smearing. You can do the following to help keep your windshield clear:

- Lower the sensitivity of the autowipers to reduce the amount of smearing.
- Switch to normal or high-speed wipe.
- Switch off the autowipers.

**Note:** Fully defrost the windshield before switching on the windshield wipers.

**Note:** Make sure you switch off the windshield wipers before entering a car wash.

**Note:** Clean the windshield and wiper blades if they begin to leave streaks or smears. If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades.

**Note:** If you switch on the autolamps feature in conjunction with autowipers, your low beam headlamps will turn on automatically when the rain sensor turns on the windshield wipers to a normal wipe speed.

## WINDSHIELD WASHERS

**Note:** Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This may cause the washer pump to overheat.



E173731

To operate the washers and spray the windshield, pull the lever toward you.



# Lighting

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### Condensation in Lamp Assemblies

Exterior lamps have vents to accommodate normal changes in air pressure.

Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a fine mist can form on the interior of the lens. The fine mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation.

Clearing time may take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

Examples of acceptable condensation are:

- The presence of a fine mist (no streaks, drip marks or large droplets).
- A fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens.

Examples of unacceptable condensation are:

- A water puddle inside the lamp.
- Streaks, drip marks or large droplets present on the interior of the lens.

If you see any unacceptable condensation, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

## LIGHTING CONTROL



E142449

- A Off
- B Parking lamps, instrument panel lamps, license plate lamps and tail lamps
- C Headlamps

### High Beams



E162679

Push the lever forward to switch the high beams on.

Push the lever forward again or pull the lever toward you to switch the high beams off.

# Lighting

## Headlamp Flasher



E162680

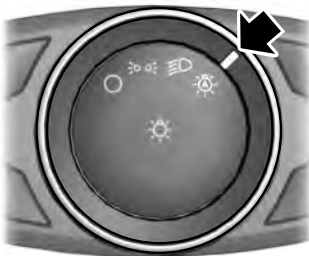
Pull the lever toward you slightly and release it to flash the headlamps.

## AUTOLAMPS

### WARNING



The autolamps switch position may not activate the headlamps in all low visibility conditions, such as daytime fog. Always ensure that your headlamps are switched to auto or on, as appropriate, during all low visibility conditions. Failure to do so may result in a collision.



E142451

When the lighting control is in the autolamps position, the headlamps automatically turn on in low light situations or when the wipers activate.

If equipped, the following also activate when the lighting control is in the autolamps position and you switch them on in the information display:

- Configurable daytime running lamps.
- Automatic high beam control.
- Adaptive headlamp control.

The headlamps remain on for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. Use the information display controls to adjust the period of time that the headlamps remain on. See **Information Displays** (page 67).

**Note:** *With the headlamps in the autolamps position, you cannot switch the high beam headlamps on until the autolamps system turns the low beam headlamps on.*

## Windshield Wiper Activated Headlamps

The windshield wiper activated headlamps turn on within 10 seconds when you switch the windshield wipers on and the lighting control is in the autolamps position. They turn off approximately 60 seconds after you switch the windshield wipers off.

The headlamps will not turn on by wiper activation:

- During a mist wipe.
- When the wipers are on to clear washer fluid during a wash condition.
- If the wipers are in intermittent mode.

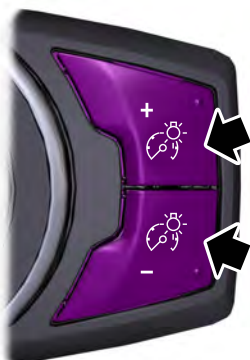
**Note:** *If you switch autolamps and autowipers on, the headlamps will automatically turn on when the windshield wipers continuously operate.*

# Lighting

## INSTRUMENT LIGHTING DIMMER

**Note:** You disable the manual dimmer when you adjust the setting to Auto Dimming in the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 67).

**Note:** If you disconnect the battery or it becomes discharged, the illuminated components will switch to the maximum setting.



E161902


Press repeatedly or press and hold until you reach the desired level.

## HEADLAMP EXIT DELAY

After you switch the ignition off, you can switch the headlamps on by pulling the direction indicator lever toward you. You will hear a short tone. The headlamps will switch off automatically after three minutes with any door open or 30 seconds after the last door has been closed. You can cancel this feature by pulling the direction indicator toward you again or switching the ignition on.

## DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS

### WARNING

 Always remember to switch your headlamps on in low light situations or during inclement weather. The system does not activate the tail lamps and may not provide adequate lighting during these conditions. Failure to activate your headlamps under these conditions may result in a collision.

To switch the system on:

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Switch the lighting control to the off or autolamp position.

## FRONT FOG LAMPS



E132709

Press the control to switch the fog lamps on or off.

You can switch the fog lamps on when the lighting control is in any position except off.

**Note:** Only use fog lamps during reduced visibility, for example, fog, snow or heavy rain.

**Note:** If you switch autolamps on, you can only switch the fog lamps on once autolamps has turned the headlamps on.

# Lighting

## REAR FOG LAMPS



E132710

Press the control to switch the fog lamps on or off.

You can only switch the rear fog lamps on when either the front fog lamps or low beam headlamps are on.

**Note:** Only use the rear fog lamps when visibility is less than 164 feet (50 meters).

**Note:** Do not use the rear fog lamps when it is raining or snowing.

**Note:** If you switch autolamps on, you can only switch the fog lamps on once autolamps has turned the headlamps on.

## HEADLAMP LEVELING

1. Press to release the pop out button.



E132711

2. Rotate the control to the required setting.
3. Push the button to the closed position.

Adjust the level of the headlamps according to the load you are carrying in your vehicle.

## Recommended Headlamp Leveling Switch Positions

Load		Load in luggage compartment	Switch position
Front seats	Second row seats		
1-2	-	-	0
2	2	-	0.5
2	2	Max	1
1	-	Max	1

# Lighting

## DIRECTION INDICATORS



E162681

Push the lever up or down to use the direction indicators.

**Note:** Tap the lever up or down to make the direction indicators flash three times to indicate a lane change.

## WELCOME LIGHTING

### Mustang Projection Lamps

The lamps are on the bottom of the exterior mirror housings. They will project an image onto the ground a short distance from your vehicle when welcome lighting or lighted entry turns on.

**Note:** Moisture, frost and ice build-up or other types of contamination on the surface of the light lens can cause non-permanent distortion or reduced brightness of the image. Do not use abrasive materials to clean the lens.

## INTERIOR LAMPS

The lamps turn on when:

- You open any door.
- You press a button on the remote control.
- You press a map lamp button.

## Map Lamps



E175199

- A Left-hand side map lamp.
- B Right-hand side map lamp.

You can switch the lamps on individually by pressing the buttons.

## AMBIENT LIGHTING

You can adjust the ambient lighting system in your information display. See **Information Displays** (page 67).

# Windows and Mirrors

## POWER WINDOWS

### WARNINGS



Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the power windows. They may seriously injure themselves.



When closing the power windows, you should verify they are free of obstructions and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.



E180087

**Note:** You may hear a pulsing noise when just one of the windows is open. Lower the opposite window slightly to reduce this noise.

**Note:** Use the singular control (if equipped) to open both rear windows.

Press the switch to open the window.

Lift the switch to close the window.

### One-Touch Down

Press the switch fully and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

### One-Touch Up (Coupe Only)

Lift the switch fully and release it. Press or lift it again to stop the window.

## Bounce-Back (Coupe Only)

The window will stop automatically while closing. It will reverse some distance if there is an obstacle in the way.

### Overriding the Bounce-Back Feature

#### WARNING



When you override the bounce-back feature the window will not reverse if it detects an obstacle. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

Pull up the window switch and hold within two seconds of the window reaching the bounce-back position. The window will travel up with no bounce-back protection. The window will stop if you release the switch before the window is fully closed.

### Accessory Delay

You can use the window switches for several minutes after you switch the ignition off or until you open either front door.

## GLOBAL OPENING

You can use the remote control to operate the windows with the ignition off.

**Note:** You can enable or disable this feature in the information display, or see an authorized dealer. See (page 67).

**Note:** To operate this feature, accessory delay must not be active.

# Windows and Mirrors

## Opening the Windows

You can open the windows for a short time after you unlock your vehicle with the remote control. After you unlock your vehicle, press and hold the remote control unlock button to open the windows. Release the button once movement starts. Press the lock or unlock button to stop movement.

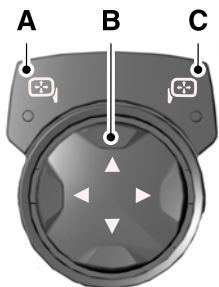
## EXTERIOR MIRRORS

### Power Exterior Mirrors

#### WARNING



Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving.



E176804

- A Left-hand mirror
- B Adjustment control
- C Right-hand mirror

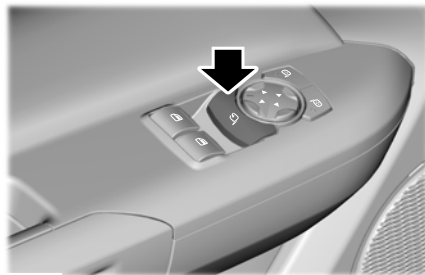
To adjust a mirror:

1. Select the mirror you want to adjust. The control will illuminate.
2. Adjust the position of the mirror.
3. Press the mirror switch again.

## Fold-Away Exterior Mirrors

Push the mirror toward the door window glass. Make sure that you fully engage the mirror in its support when returning it to its original position.

## Power-Folding Mirrors



E176805

Press the control to fold the mirror toward the door window glass. Press the control again to fold the mirror back out to its original position.

## Loose Mirror

If your power-folding mirrors are manually folded, they may not work properly, even after you re-position them. You need to reset them if:

- The mirrors vibrate when you drive.
- The mirrors feel loose.
- The mirrors do not stay in the folded or unfolded position.
- One of the mirrors is not in its normal driving position.

To reset the power-fold feature, use the power-folding mirror control and unfold the mirrors. You may hear a loud noise as you reset the power-folding mirrors. This sound is normal. Repeat this process as needed each time the mirrors are manually folded.

# Windows and Mirrors

## Heated Exterior Mirrors

See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 90).

## Signal Indicator Mirrors

The outer portion of the appropriate mirror housing will blink when you switch on the turn signal.

## INTERIOR MIRROR

### WARNING



Do not adjust the mirror when your vehicle is moving.

**Note:** Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum or ammonia-based cleaning products.

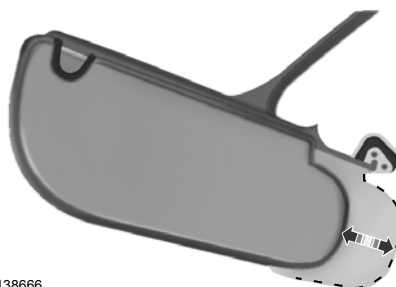
You can adjust the interior mirror to your preference. In addition to the standard pivot point, this mirror also includes a second pivot point, letting you move the mirror head up or down and from side to side.

## Auto-Dimming Mirror

**Note:** Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the mirror. Mirror performance may be affected. A rear center passenger or raised rear center head restraint may also block light from reaching the sensor.

To reduce glare, the mirror dims automatically when it detects bright lights from behind your vehicle. It automatically returns to normal reflection when you select reverse (R) gear to make sure you have a clear view when backing up.

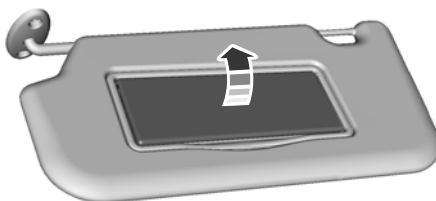
## SUN VISORS



E138666

Rotate the sun visor toward the side window and extend it rearward for extra shade.

## Illuminated Vanity Mirror



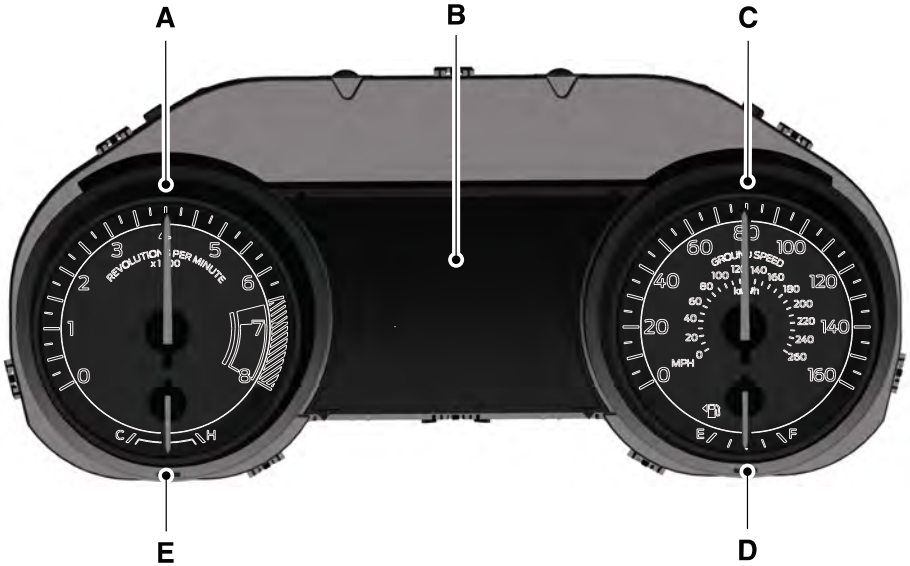
E162197

Lift the cover to switch the lamp on.



# Instrument Cluster

## GAUGES



E174486

- A Tachometer (Revolutions per minute)
- B Information display
- C Speedometer (Ground speed)
- D Fuel gauge
- E Engine coolant temperature gauge

### Information Display

#### Odometer

Located in the bottom of the information display. Registers the accumulated distance your vehicle has traveled.

#### Trip Computer

See (page 67).

#### Vehicle Settings and Personalization

See (page 67).

# Instrument Cluster

## Fuel Gauge

**Note:** *The fuel gauge may vary slightly when your vehicle is moving or on a gradient.*

Switch the ignition on. The fuel gauge will indicate approximately how much fuel is left in the fuel tank. The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

The needle should move toward F when you refuel your vehicle. If the needle points to E after adding fuel, this indicates your vehicle needs service soon.

After refueling some variability in needle position is normal:

- It may take a short time for the needle to reach F after leaving the gas station. This is normal and depends upon the slope of pavement at the gas station.
- The fuel amount dispensed into the tank is a little less or more than the gauge indicated. This is normal and depends upon the slope of pavement at the gas station.
- If the gas station nozzle shuts off before the tank is full, try a different gas pump nozzle.

## Low Fuel Reminder

A low fuel reminder triggers when the distance to empty value reaches 80 km (50 mi) to empty, with additional warnings at 40 km (25 mi), 20 km (10 mi) and 0 km (0 mi) to empty, provided the message is cleared each time. An additional warning at 120 km (75 mi) to empty is provided when the MyKey is being used.

## Variations:

**Note:** *The low fuel warning and distance-to-empty warning can appear at different fuel gauge positions depending on fuel economy conditions. This variation is normal.*

Driving type (fuel economy conditions)	Distance-to-empty	Fuel gauge position
Highway driving	80 km (50 mi)	1/8th tank
Severe duty driving (trailer towing, extended idle)	80 km (50 mi)	1/4 tank

## Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge

### WARNING



Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

Indicates engine coolant temperature. At normal operating temperature, the level indicator will be in the normal range. If the engine coolant temperature exceeds the normal range, stop your vehicle as soon as safely possible, switch off the engine and let it cool.

# Instrument Cluster

## WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS

The following warning lamps and indicators will alert you to a vehicle condition that may become serious. Some lamps will illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure they work. If any lamps remain on after starting your vehicle, refer to the respective system warning lamp for further information.

**Note:** *Some warning indicators appear in the information display and function the same as a warning lamp but do not display when you start your vehicle.*

### Anti-Lock Braking System



If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. You will continue to have the normal braking system (without ABS) unless the brake system warning lamp is also illuminated. Have the system checked by your authorized dealer.

### Battery



If it illuminates while driving, it indicates a malfunction. Switch off all unnecessary electrical equipment and have the system checked by your authorized dealer immediately.

### Bonnet Ajar



It illuminates when the ignition is on and the bonnet is not completely closed.

### Boot Ajar



It illuminates when the ignition is on and the boot is not completely closed.

## Brake System



It illuminates when you engage the parking brake with the ignition on.

If it illuminates when you are driving, check that the parking brake is not engaged. If the parking brake is not engaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system malfunction. Have the system checked immediately by your authorized dealer.

## WARNING



Driving your vehicle with the warning lamp on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It will take you longer to stop your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked by your authorized dealer immediately. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.

## Cruise Control



It illuminates when you switch this feature on.

## Direction Indicator



It illuminates when the left or right turn signal or the hazard warning flasher is turned on. If the indicators stay on or flash faster, check for a burned out bulb. See **Changing a Bulb** (page 164).

## Door Ajar



Displays when the ignition is on and any door is not completely closed.

# Instrument Cluster

## Engine Coolant Temperature



Illuminates when the engine coolant temperature is high. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, switch off the engine and let cool. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 156).

## Engine Oil



If it illuminates with the engine running or when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction.

Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 156).

**Note:** *Do not resume your journey if it illuminates despite the level being correct. Have the system checked by your authorized dealer immediately.*

## Fasten Safety Belt



It will illuminate and a chime will sound to remind you to fasten your safety belt. See **Seatbelt Reminder** (page 22).

## Front Airbag



If it fails to illuminate when you start your vehicle, continues to flash or remains on, it indicates a malfunction. Have the system checked by your authorized dealer.

## Front Fog Lamps



Lights when you switch the front fog lamps on.

## High Beam



It will illuminate when you switch the high beam headlamps on. It will flash when you use the headlamp flasher.

## Low Beam Malfunction



Lights when there is a malfunction with the low beam headlamp bulb.

## Low Fuel Level



It will illuminate when the fuel level is low or the fuel tank is nearly empty. Refuel as soon as possible.

## Low Tire Pressure Warning



It will illuminate when your tire pressure is low. If the lamp remains on with the engine running or when driving, check your tire pressures as soon as possible.

It will also illuminate momentarily when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by your authorized dealer.

## Parking Lamps



It will illuminate when you switch the parking lamps on.

## Rear Fog Lamps Indicator



It will illuminate when you switch the rear fog lamps on.

# Instrument Cluster

## Service Engine Soon



If the service engine soon indicator light stays illuminated after the engine is started, it indicates that the On Board Diagnostics system (OBD) has detected a malfunction of the vehicle emissions control system. Refer to On board diagnostics (OBD) in the Fuel and Refueling chapter for more information about having your vehicle serviced.

If the light is blinking, engine misfire is occurring which could damage your catalytic converter. Drive in a moderate fashion (avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration) and have your vehicle serviced immediately.

### WARNING



Under engine misfire conditions, excessive exhaust temperatures could damage the catalytic converter, the fuel system, interior floor coverings or other vehicle components, possibly causing a fire. Have an authorized dealer service your vehicle immediately.

The service engine soon indicator light illuminates when the ignition is first turned on prior to engine start to check the bulb and to indicate whether the vehicle is ready for Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) testing.

Normally, the service engine soon light will stay on until the engine is cranked, then turn itself off if no malfunctions are present. However, if after 15 seconds the service engine soon light blinks eight times, it means that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing.

## Stability Control



It will flash when the system is active. If it remains illuminated or does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, this indicates a malfunction. During a malfunction the system will switch off. Have the system checked by your authorized dealer immediately. See **Using Stability Control** (page 119).

## Stability Control Off



It will illuminate when you switch the system off. It will go out when you switch the system back on or when you switch the ignition off. See **Using Stability Control** (page 119).

## AUDIBLE WARNINGS AND INDICATORS

### Keyless Warning Alert

The horn will sound twice when you exit your vehicle with the intelligent access key and your vehicle is in ON, indicating your vehicle is still on. The horn will also sound twice when you exit your vehicle and attempt to lock the doors manually while the intelligent access key is still in the vehicle. The doors will not lock if the intelligent access key remains in the vehicle.

### Headlamps On Warning Chime

Sounds when you remove the key from the vehicle and you have left the headlamps or parking lamps on.

# Instrument Cluster

---

## **Parking Brake On Warning Chime**

Sounds when you have left the parking brake on and drive your vehicle. If the warning chime remains on after you have released the parking brake, have the system checked by your authorized dealer immediately.

# Information Displays

## GENERAL INFORMATION

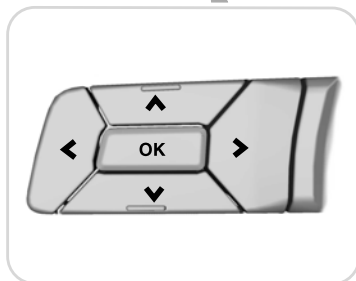
### WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Various systems on your vehicle can be controlled using the information display controls on the steering wheel. Corresponding information is displayed in the information display.

## Information Display Controls



E174488

- Press the up and down arrow buttons to scroll through and highlight the options within a menu.
- Press the right arrow button to enter a sub-menu.
- Press the left arrow button to exit a menu.
- Press and hold the left arrow button at any time to return to the main menu display (escape button).
- Press the **OK** button to choose and confirm settings or messages.

# Information Displays

## Main Menu

Gauge Mode
Trip/Fuel
Track Apps™
Driver assist
Settings



This icon gives you the ability to switch a feature on or off. A check in the box indicates the feature is enabled, and unchecked indicates the feature is disabled.

**Note:** Some options may appear slightly different or not at all if the items are optional.

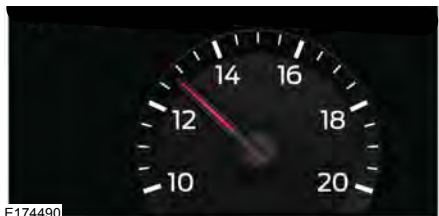
Gauge Mode		
Distance to empty		
Tyre pressure		
Gauge summary	Air/Fuel ratio	Virtual gauge shown
	Boost/Vacuum	
	Cylinder head temp	
	Inlet air temp	
	Oil pressure	
	Oil temperature	
	Transmiss. oil temp	
	Battery voltage	

**Note:** In order to provide real-time values, some gauges may display more value fluctuation than other gauges during normal operation.

Some gauges shown in standard measure. Metric similar.

### Air/Fuel ratio

Displays the current air to fuel mixture in the engine.



E174490



# Information Displays

## Boost/Vacuum

Displays the vacuum or boost pressure.



## Oil pressure

Displays the engine oil pressure. If the pressure is consistently too high or very low, contact an authorized dealer.



## Cylinder head temp

Displays the engine's cylinder head temperature.



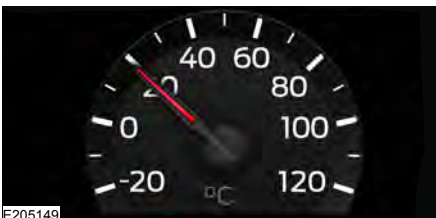
## Oil temperature

Displays the engine oil temperature. If the temperature rises to the red area, stop in a safe place and let your vehicle cool. If the problem persists, see an authorized dealer.



## Inlet air temp

Displays the temperature of the air in the cold air inlet tube.



# Information Displays

## Transmiss. oil temp

Displays the transmission fluid operating temperature. If the temperature rises to the red area, stop in a safe place and let the transmission cool. If the problem persists, see an authorized dealer.



E174494

## Battery voltage

Displays your vehicle's battery voltage. If the voltage is consistently too high or very low, contact an authorized dealer.



E174495

## Trip/Fuel

Trip 1 or Trip 2 - Trip timer, Trip distance, km to E and l/100 km

Fuel economy

Instant fuel economy

l/100 km

km to E

Fuel history

Last 30 minutes

l/100 km

km to E

Average speed

**Note:** Press and hold **OK** to reset the currently displayed information.

Menu Item	Description
Trip Timer	Registers the time of individual journeys.
Trip Distance	Registers the mileage of individual journeys.
km to E	Shows the approximate distance our vehicle can travel before running out of fuel.

## Information Displays

Menu Item	Description
L/100 km	Shows the average fuel usage based on time.
Instant fuel economy	Shows your instantaneous fuel usage.
Fuel history	Shows fuel usage as a bar graph based on time. The graph is updated each minute with the fuel economy that you achieved during 30 minutes of driving.

### WARNING



Track Apps is for track use only. Remember that even advanced technology cannot defy the laws of physics. It is always possible to lose control of a vehicle due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Aggressive driving on any road condition can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of personal injury or property damage.

**Note:** *Track Apps are for track use only. They are not to be used under any other driving conditions.*

**Note:** *Viewed or cleared results cannot be used unless your vehicle is at a complete stop. The right arrow on the display menu will be inactive. If your vehicle does not reach 100 mph (160 km/h) during the track run, your display may not display your 1/4 mile results.*

**Note:** *The system will disable the collision warning system while using track apps or when you switch off ESC.*

Track Apps™	
Accelerometer	Virtual gauge shown
Acceleration timer	Select your speed, distance and start settings
Brake performance	Select setting
Lap Timer	Track (XXX)
Launch control	RPM <span style="float: right;">Select setting</span>
View/Clear results	Acceleration timer
	Brake performance
	All time best
	Clear saved data
	Clear all time best
	Clear acceleration

# Information Displays

## Accelerometer

Displays your vehicle's rate of acceleration or deceleration.



The red dot will move toward the area of acceleration or deceleration.

- LEFT acceleration or deceleration - When accelerating or decelerating left, the red dot will move to the right on the accelerometer.
- RIGHT acceleration/deceleration - When accelerating or decelerating right, the red dot will move to the left on the accelerometer.

## Acceleration timer

Displays your vehicle's rate of acceleration.

1. Choose desired speed or distance.
2. Choose Automatic Start or Countdown Start.

## Driver assist

ESC

Hill start assist

Rear Park Pilot

Seatbelts

Tyre pressure monitor

3. Follow the on-screen prompts.

## Brake performance

Displays your vehicle's rate of deceleration.

1. Choose desired speed to start recording data.
2. Follow the on-screen prompts.

## Lap Timer

Gives the driver the ability to record three separate lap times.

## Launch control

Maximize traction from a standing start.

## Line lock

Locks front brakes while allowing rear wheels to turn freely.

## View/Clear results

View and clear the last and saved results of the acceleration timer, brake performance and all time best.

**Note:** *Some items are optional and may not appear.*

# Information Displays

## Tyre pressure

Displays your current vehicle tire pressures.



E205145

**Note:** Some items are optional and may not appear.

Settings			
Vehicle settings	Alarm system	Ask on exit	
		Lighting	Headlamp delay
	Daytime lights		
	Locks	Auto unlock	
		Mislock	
		Relock	
		Unlocking	Select setting
		Switches inhibit	
	Oil life reset		
	Park lock control		
	Remote start	Climate control	Select setting
		Seats	
		Duration	
		System	
Windows	Global open		
	Global close		
Wipers	Courtesy wipe		
	Rain sensing		

# Information Displays

<b>Settings</b>			
<b>Vehicle settings</b>	<b>Alarm system</b>	<b>Ask on exit</b>	
MyColour	Gauge Color	Select colour	
	Ambient light	Ambient light	
		Ambient dim	Select setting
		Ambient colour	Select colour
	Set MyColour	Set MyColour 1 - 3	
MyKey	MyKey info	Select setting	
	Create MyKey		
	Emergency Assistance		
	ESC		
	Do not disturb		
	Max speed		
	Speed minder		
	Volume limit		
	Clear MyKeys	Select setting	
Display settings	Measure unit	Select setting	
	Temperature unit		
	Tyre pressure		
	Language		

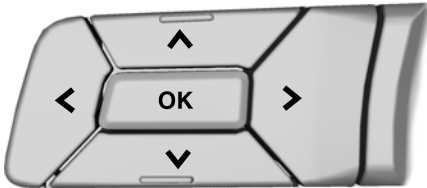
# Information Displays

## INFORMATION MESSAGES

**Note:** Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all of the messages display or are available. The information display may abbreviate or shorten certain messages.

Press the **OK** button to acknowledge and remove some messages from the information display. The information display automatically removes other messages after a short time.

You need to confirm certain messages before you can access the menus.



E174595

## Airbag

Message	Action
Occupant sensor blocked Remove objects near passenger seat	The system detects a malfunction due to a blocked sensor. Remove blockage.

## Alarm

Message	Action
Vehicle alarm Start vehicle to stop alarm	Alarm triggered due to unauthorized entry. See <b>Anti-Theft Alarm</b> (page 47).
Alarm system Full guard Reduced guard	All perimeter sensors are active. See <b>Anti-Theft Alarm</b> (page 47).

# Information Displays

## Battery and Charging System

Message	Action
Check Charging system	The charging system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Charging system Service soon	The charging system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Charging system Service now	The charging system needs servicing. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Battery state of charge low	The battery management system determines that the battery is at a low state of charge. Turn your ignition off as soon as possible to protect the battery. This message clears once you restart your vehicle and the battery state of charge has recovered.
Low battery Features temporarily turned off	The battery management system detects an extended low-voltage condition. Your vehicle disables various features to help preserve the battery. Turn off as many of the electrical loads as soon as possible to improve system voltage. If the system voltage has recovered, the disabled features operate again as normal.
Turn power off to save battery	The battery management system determines that the battery is at a low state of charge. Turn your ignition off as soon as possible to protect the battery. This message clears once you restart your vehicle and the battery state of charge has recovered. Turning off unnecessary electrical loads allow faster battery state-of-charge recovery.

## Doors and Locks

Message	Action
X door open	The door(s) listed is not completely closed.
Boot open	The boot is not completely closed.
Bonnet open	The bonnet is not completely closed.
Switches inhibited Security mode	The system has disabled the door switches.



# Information Displays

## Electronic Stability Control

Message	Action
ESC Service required	The system detects a malfunction due to a blocked sensor.
ESC Off On	The driver has disabled or enabled the traction control.
ESC Sport mode	The system is in sport mode.

## Engine

Message	Action
Power reduced to lower engine temperature	The engine is overheating and the power has been reduced to assist in lowering the temperature. Stop in a safe place as soon as it is possible.

## Fuel

Message	Action
Fuel Level Low	An early reminder of a low fuel condition.
Check fuel fill inlet	The fuel fill inlet may not be properly closed.

## Hill Start Assist

Message	Action
Hill start assist not available	Hill start assist is not available. Contact an authorized dealer. See <b>Hill Start Assist</b> (page 115).

## Keys and Intelligent Access

Message	Action
Press brake to start	A reminder to press the brake while starting the vehicle.
Press clutch to start	A reminder to depress the clutch pedal on manual transmission while starting the vehicle.
No key detected	The system does not detect a key in your vehicle. See <b>Keyless Starting</b> (page 98).

## Information Displays

Message	Action
Restart now or key is needed	You pressed the start/stop button to switch off the engine and your vehicle does not detect your intelligent access key inside your vehicle.
Accessory power is active	Your vehicle is in the accessory ignition state.
Starting system malfunction	There is a problem with your vehicle's starting system. See an authorized dealer for service.
Key program successful	You have successfully programmed an intelligent access key to the system.
Key program failure	You have failed to program an intelligent access key to the system.
Maximum number of keys learned	You have programmed the maximum number of keys to the system.
Not enough keys learned	You have not programmed enough keys to the system.
Key battery low Replace soon	The key battery is low. Change the battery as soon as possible.
Engine ON	Inform the driver that they are exiting the vehicle and the engine is on.

## Maintenance

Message	Action
Engine oil pressure low	Stop your vehicle as soon as safely possible and turn off the engine. Check the oil level. If the warning stays on or continues to come on with your engine running, contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Change engine oil soon	The engine oil life remaining is 10% or less. See <b>Engine Oil Check</b> (page 156).
Oil change required	The oil life left is at 0%. See <b>Engine Oil Check</b> (page 156).
Brake Fluid Level Low	The brake fluid level is low, inspected the brake system immediately. See <b>Brake Fluid Check</b> (page 158).

## Information Displays

<b>Message</b>	<b>Action</b>
Check brake system	The brake system needs servicing. Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Contact an authorized dealer.
Transport / factory mode Contact dealer	Your vehicle is still in Transport or Factory mode. This may not allow some features to operate properly. See an authorized dealer.
See manual	The powertrain needs service due to a powertrain malfunction.

### MyKey

<b>Message</b>	<b>Action</b>
MyKey not created	You cannot program a MyKey.
MyKey active Drive safely	MyKey is active.
Speed limited to XX MPH/km/h	When switching on your vehicle and MyKey is in use, displays that the MyKey speed limit is on.
Vehicle near top speed	MyKey is in use and the MyKey speed limit is on and the vehicle speed is approaching 80 mph (130 km/h).
MyKey Vehicle at top speed	You have reached the speed limit set for your MyKey.
Check speed Drive safely	You have an active MyKey with a programmed set speed limit.
Buckle up to unmute audio	Belt-Minder turns on with a MyKey in use.
MyKey ESC on	With a MyKey in use, ESC turns on.
MyKey Traction control on	With a MyKey in use, traction control turns on.
MyKey Park Pilot cannot be deactivated	With a MyKey in use, park aid is always on.

# Information Displays

## Park Brake

Message	Action
Park brake applied	You have set the parking brake and you have driven the vehicle more than 3 mph (5 km/h). If the warning stays on after you have released the parking brake, contact an authorized dealer.

## Park Pilot

Message	Action
Check rear Park Pilot	The system has detected a condition that requires service. Contact an authorized dealer. See <b>Rear Parking Aid</b> (page 122).
Rear Park Pilot On Off	Displays the park aid status.

## Seats

Message	Action
Memory recall not permitted while driving	A reminder that memory seats are not available while driving.
Memory {0} saved	Shows where you have saved your memory setting.

## Starting System

Message	Action
Press brake to start	A reminder to apply the brake when starting your vehicle.
Press clutch to start	A reminder to apply the clutch when starting your vehicle.
Cranking time exceeded	The starter has exceeded its cranking time in attempting to start your vehicle.
Engine start pending Please wait	The starter is attempting to start your vehicle.
Pending start cancelled	The system has cancelled the pending start.

# Information Displays

## Steering System

Message	Action
Steering malfunction Service now	The power steering system has detected a condition that requires service. See an authorized dealer.
Steering loss Stop safely	The power steering system is not working. Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Contact an authorized dealer.
Steering assist malfunction Service required	The power steering system has detected a condition within the power steering system or passive entry or passive start system requires service. Contact an authorized dealer.
Steering lock malfunction Service now	The steering lock system has detected a condition that requires service. See an authorized dealer.
Steering lock Reinsert key while turning wheel	You need to turn your steering wheel while start your vehicle to unlock your steering column.

## Traction Control

Message	Action
Traction control off / Traction control on	The status of the traction control system after you switched it off or on. See <b>Using Traction Control</b> (page 117).
Spinout Detected Hazards Activated	A spinout has occurred and the hazards are on.

## Transmission

Message	Action
Transmission malfunction Service now	See your authorized dealer.
Transmission overheating Stop safely	The transmission is overheating and needs to cool. Stop in a safe place as soon as it is possible.
Transmission overtemperature Stop safely	The transmission has overheated and needs to cool. Stop in a safe place as soon as it is possible.
Transmission Service Required	See your authorized dealer.
Transmission too hot Press brake	Transmission is getting hot. Stop to let it cool.

## Information Displays

Message	Action
Transmission limited function See manual	Displays when the transmission has overheated and has limited functionality. See <b>Automatic Transmission</b> (page 109).
Transmission Warming Up Please Wait	Transmission is too cold. Wait for it to warm up before you drive.
Transmission not in Park	Displays as a reminder to shift into park.
Press brake pedal	Displays as a reminder to press the brake pedal in order to select a gear.
Transmission Adjusted	Displays when the transmission has adjusted the shift strategy.
Transmission Adapt-Mode	Displays when the transmission is adjusting the shift strategy.
Transmission Indicat-Mode Lockup on	Displays when the transmission shift lever is locked and unable to select gears.
Transmission Indicat-Mode Lockup off	Displays when the transmission shift lever is unlocked and free to select gears.

## Tyre Pressure Monitoring System

Message	Action
Tyre pressure low	One or more tires on your vehicle has low tire pressure. See <b>Tyre Pressure Monitoring System</b> (page 179).
Tyre pressure monitor malfunction	The tire pressure monitoring system is malfunctioning. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer. See <b>Tyre Pressure Monitoring System</b> (page 179).
Tyre pressure sensor malfunction	A tire pressure sensor is malfunctioning or your spare tire is in use. See <b>Tyre Pressure Monitoring System</b> (page 179). If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

# Climate Control

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

### Outside Air

Keep the air intakes in front of the windshield free from obstruction (such as snow or leaves) to allow the climate control system to function effectively.

### Recirculated Air

#### WARNING



Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to mist up. If the windows mist up, follow the settings for demisting the windshield.

The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. Outside air does not enter your vehicle.

### Heating

Heating performance depends on the temperature of the engine coolant.

### General Information on Controlling the Interior Climate

Fully close all the windows.

### Warming the Interior

Direct the air toward your feet. In cold or humid weather conditions, direct some of the air toward the windshield and the door windows.

### Cooling the Interior

Direct the air toward your face.

## Air Conditioning

The system directs air through the evaporator for cooling. The evaporator extracts humidity from the air to help keep the windows free of mist. The system directs the resulting condensation to the outside of your vehicle, which may cause a small pool to form under your vehicle. This is normal.

**Note:** The air conditioning operates only when the temperature is above 4°C (39°F).

**Note:** When you use air conditioning, your vehicle uses more fuel.

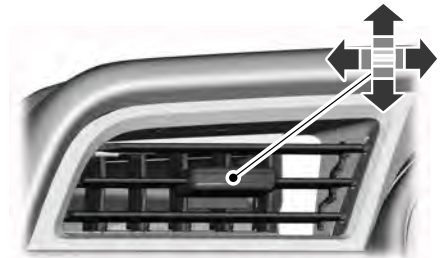
## AIR VENTS

### Center Air Vents



E204054

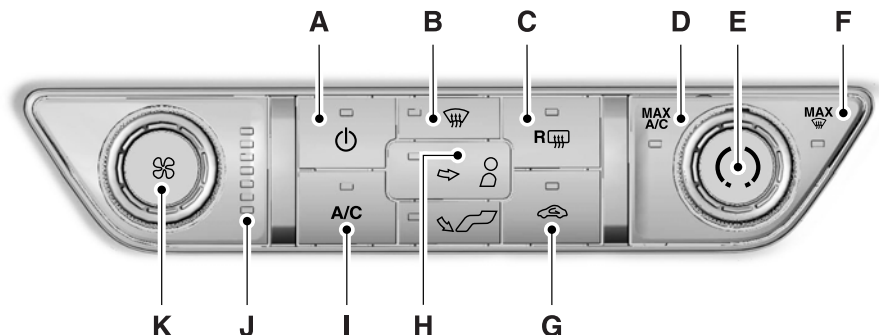
### Side Air Vents



E204055

# Climate Control

## MANUAL CLIMATE CONTROL



E174095

- A **Power:** Press the button to switch the system on and off. When the system is off, it prevents outside air from entering the vehicle.
  - B **Defrost:** Select to distribute air through the windshield air vents. Air distribution to the instrument panel and footwell vents turns off. You can also use this setting to defrost and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.
  - C **Heated rear window:** Press the button to switch the heated rear window on and off. See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 90).
  - D **MAX A/C:** Adjust the control to the full cool position to maximize cooling. Recirculated air flows through the instrument panel vents, air conditioning automatically turns on, and the fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed.
  - E **Temperature control:** Controls the temperature of the air circulated in your vehicle.
  - F **MAX Defrost:** Adjust the control to the full heat position to switch on defrost. Outside air flows through the windshield vents, air conditioning automatically turns on, and fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed. You can also use this setting to defrost and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice. The heated rear window also automatically turns on when you select maximum defrost.
- Note:** To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.



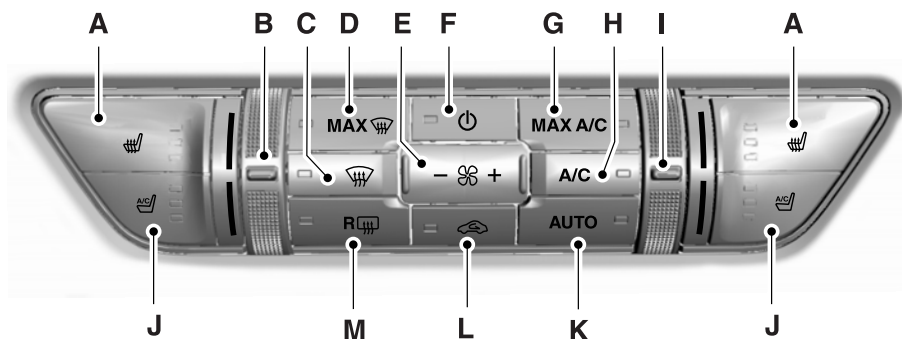
# Climate Control

---

- G **Recirculated air:** Press the button to switch between outside air and recirculated air. When you select recirculated air, the air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This may reduce the time needed to cool the interior (when used with **A/C**) and may reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.
- Note:** Recirculated air may turn off automatically (or be prevented from turning on) in all airflow modes except **MAX A/C** to reduce risk of fogging. Recirculated air may also turn on and off automatically in **Panel** or **Panel and Floor** airflow modes during hot weather in order to improve cooling efficiency.
- H **Air distribution control:** Adjust the control to turn airflow from the windshield, instrument panel, or footwell vents on or off. You can distribute air through any combination of these vents.
- I **A/C:** Press the button to switch the air conditioning on or off. Air conditioning cools your vehicle using outside air. To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.
- Note:** In certain conditions (for example, maximum defrost), the air conditioning compressor may continue to operate even though the air conditioning is switched off.
- J **Fan speed indicators:** Illuminates to indicate fan speed.
- K **Fan speed control:** Adjusts the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.

# Climate Control

## AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL



E174096

- A **Heated seats (if equipped):** Press the button to switch the heated seats on and off. See **Climate Controlled Seats** (page 94).
- B **Driver temperature control:** Adjusts the temperature setting using the control on the driver side.
- C **Defrost:** Select to distribute air through the windshield air vents. Air distribution to the instrument panel and footwell vents turns off. You can also use this setting to defrost and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.
- D **MAX Defrost:** Press the button to switch on defrost. Outside air flows through the windshield vents, air conditioning automatically turns on, and fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed. You can also use this setting to defrost and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice. The heated rear window also automatically turns on when you select maximum defrost.  
**Note:** To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.
- E **Fan speed control:** Adjusts the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.
- F **Power:** Press the button to switch the system on and off. When the system is off, it prevents outside air from entering the vehicle.
- G **MAX A/C:** Press the button to maximize cooling. Recirculated air flows through the instrument panel vents, air conditioning automatically turns on, and the fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed.

# Climate Control

---

- H **A/C:** Press the button to turn air conditioning compressor on or off. Use air conditioning with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency.  
**Note:** In certain conditions (for example, maximum defrost), the air conditioning compressor may continue to operate even though the air conditioning is switched off.
- I **Passenger temperature control:** Adjusts the temperature on the passenger side.
- J **Climate controlled seats (if equipped):** Press the button to switch the climate controlled seats on and off. See **Climate Controlled Seats** (page 94).
- K **AUTO:** Press the button to turn on automatic operation. Select the desired temperature using the temperature control. The system adjusts fan speed, air distribution, air conditioning operation, and selects outside air or recirculated air to heat or cool the vehicle in order to maintain the desired temperature. You can also use the **AUTO** button to turn off dual zone operation by pressing and holding the button for more than two seconds.
- L **Recirculated air:** Press the button to switch between outside air and recirculated air. When you select recirculated air, the air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This may reduce the time needed to cool the interior (when used with **A/C**) and may reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.  
**Note:** Recirculated air may turn off automatically (or be prevented from turning on) in all airflow modes except **MAX A/C** to reduce risk of fogging. Recirculated air may also turn on and off automatically in **Panel** or **Panel and Floor** airflow modes during hot weather in order to improve cooling efficiency.
- M **Heated rear window:** Press the button to switch the heated rear window on and off. See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 90).

## HINTS ON CONTROLLING THE INTERIOR CLIMATE

### General Hints

#### WARNING



Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up. If the windows fog up, follow the settings for demisting the windshield.

---

**Note:** You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.

**Note:** To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.

**Note:** Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.

**Note:** Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.

# Climate Control

**Note:** To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

## Manual Climate Control

**Note:** To reduce fogging of the windshield during humid weather, adjust the air distribution control to the windshield air vents position.

## Automatic Climate Control

**Note:** Adjusting the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold is not necessary. The system automatically adjusts to heat or cool the interior to your selected temperature as quickly as possible. For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.

**Note:** If you select **AUTO** during cold outside temperatures, the system directs airflow to the windshield and side window vents. In addition, the fan may run at a slower speed until the engine warms up.

**Note:** If you select **AUTO** during hot outside temperatures, or when the inside of the vehicle is hot, the system automatically uses recirculated air to maximize interior cooling. When the interior reaches the selected temperature, the system automatically switches to using outside air.

## Heating the Interior Quickly

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Adjust the fan speed to a high speed setting.	Press the <b>AUTO</b> button.
2	Adjust the temperature control to the full heat setting.	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting.
3	Select the footwell air vents using the air distribution buttons.	

# Climate Control

## Recommended Settings for Heating

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Adjust the fan speed to the center setting.	Press the <b>AUTO</b> button.
2	Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the hot settings.	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting. Use 22°C (72°F) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.
3	Select the footwell air vents using the air distribution buttons.	

## Cooling the Interior Quickly

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Adjust the temperature control to the <b>MAX A/C</b> position.	Press the <b>MAX A/C</b> button.
2	Drive with the windows fully open until you feel cold air through the air vents.	

## Recommended Settings for Cooling

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Adjust the fan speed to the center setting.	Press the <b>AUTO</b> button.
2	Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the cold settings.	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting. Use 22°C (72°F) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.
3	Select the instrument panel air vents using the air distribution buttons.	

# Climate Control

## Side Window Defogging in Cold Weather

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Select the windshield air vents using the air distribution buttons.	Press the defrost button.
2	Press the <b>A/C</b> button if the indicator is off.	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting. Use 22°C (72°F) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.
3	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting.	
4	Adjust the fan speed to a high speed setting.	

## HEATED WINDOWS AND MIRRORS

### Heated Rear Window

**Note:** Make sure the engine is running before operating the heated windows.



Press the button to clear the heated rear window of thin ice and fog. The heated rear window will automatically turn off after a short period of time. Start the engine before you switch the heated rear window on.

**Note:** Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. The vehicle warranty does not cover damage caused to the heated rear window grid lines.

### Heated Exterior Mirror (if Equipped)

When you switch the heated rear window on, the heated exterior mirrors will automatically turn on.

**Note:** Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.

**Note:** Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.

## CABIN AIR FILTER

Your vehicle is equipped with a cabin air filter, which gives you and your passengers the following benefits:

- It improves your driving comfort by reducing particle concentration.
- It improves the interior compartment cleanliness.
- It protects the climate control components from particle deposits.

You can locate the cabin air filter behind the glove box.

**Note:** Make sure you have a cabin air filter installed at all times. This prevents foreign objects from entering the system. Running the system without a filter in place could result in degradation or damage to the system.

Replace the filter at regular intervals.

For additional cabin air filter information, or to replace the filter, see an authorized dealer.

# Seats

## SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION

### WARNINGS



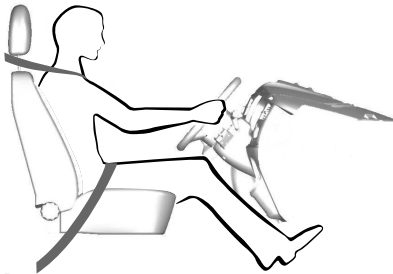
Do not recline the seat backrest too far as this can cause the occupant to slide under the safety belt, resulting in serious injury in the event of a crash.



Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seat backrest reclined too far, can result in serious injury or death in the event of a crash. Always sit upright against your seat backrest, with your feet on the floor.



Do not place objects higher than the seat backrest to reduce the risk of serious injury in the event of a crash or during heavy braking.



E688595

When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, safety belt and airbags will provide optimum protection in the event of a crash.

We recommend that you follow these guidelines:

- Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- Do not recline the seat backrest more than 30 degrees.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable.
- Keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 10 inches (25 centimeters) between your breastbone and the airbag cover.
- Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.
- Bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- Position the shoulder strap of the safety belt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

## HEAD RESTRAINTS

### WARNINGS



Raise the rear head restraint when the rear seat is occupied by a passenger.

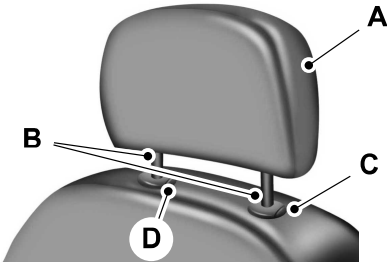


Do not remove the front head restraints when the front seats are in use.

**Note:** *Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head.*

# Seats

## Front seat head restraints



E138642

The head restraints consist of:

- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Two steel stems.
- C Guide sleeve adjust and release button.
- D Guide sleeve unlock and remove button.

## Adjusting the Head Restraint

### Raising the Head Restraint

Pull the head restraint up.

### Lowering the Head Restraint

1. Press and hold button C.
2. Push the head restraint down.

### Removing the Head Restraint

1. Pull the head restraint up until it reaches its highest position.
2. Press and hold buttons C and D.
3. Pull the head restraint up.

### Installing the Head Restraint

Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until in locks.

## Tilting Head Restraints

The front head restraints tilt for extra comfort. To tilt the head restraint, do the following:



E144727

1. Adjust the seatback to an upright driving or riding position.
2. Pivot the head restraint forward toward your head to the desired position.

After the head restraint reaches the forward-most tilt position, pivoting it forward again will then release it to the rearward, untilted position.

## MANUAL SEATS

### WARNING



Rock the seat backward and forward after releasing the lever to make sure that it is fully engaged.

The manual front seats may consist of:



# Seats




E174553


- A A bar to move the seat backward and forward.
- B A lever to adjust the height of the seat.
- C A lever to adjust the angle of the seatback.

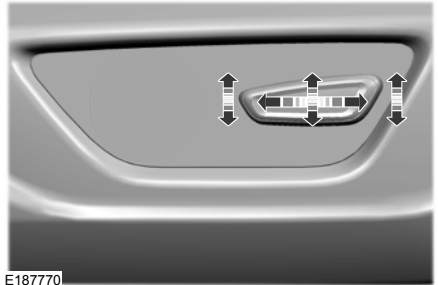
## POWER SEATS

### WARNINGS

 Do not adjust the driver seat or seatback when your vehicle is moving. Adjusting your seatback while your vehicle is in motion may cause loss of control of your vehicle.

### WARNINGS

 Reclining the seatback can cause an occupant to slide under the seat's safety belt, resulting in severe personal injuries in the event of a crash.

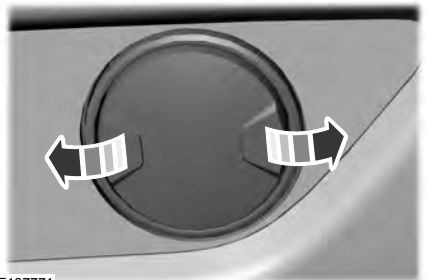


E187770

The power seat control is located on the outboard side of the seat. Move the control in the direction of the arrows to raise or lower the seat cushion or to move the seat forward, backward, up or down.

### Power Lumbar (If Equipped)

The power lumbar control is located on the side of the driver seat.



E187771

Press one side of the control to increase lower back firmness. Press the other side of the control to decrease lower back firmness.

# Seats

## REAR SEATS

### WARNINGS



When folding the seatbacks down, take care not to get your fingers caught between the seatback and seat frame.



Make sure that the seats and the seatbacks are secure and fully engaged in their catches.

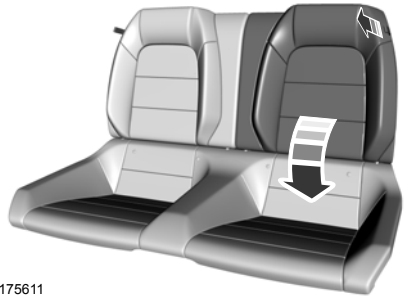
**Note:** Your vehicle may have split seatbacks that you must fold individually.



E207088

Use the seatback release to fold the back of the front seat forward for rear seat access. The release handle is located on the upper back of the front seat. The seatback has memory and locks automatically in the original position.

## Second Row Split-Folding Rear Seat (If Equipped)



E175611

To lower the seatback(s):

1. Pull the strap to release the seatback.
2. Fold the seatback down.

When raising the seatback(s), make sure you hear the seat latch into place. Pull down on the seatback to make sure that it has latched.

## CLIMATE CONTROLLED SEATS

### Heated Seats (If Equipped)

#### WARNING



Persons who are unable to feel pain to the skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion, or other physical conditions, must exercise care when using the seat heater. The seat heater may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket or cushion, because this may cause the seat heater to overheat.

**Note:** Do not do the following:

# Seats

---

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the seat heater if water or any other liquid spills on the seat. Allow the seat to dry thoroughly.
- Operate the heated seats unless the engine is running. Doing so can cause the battery to lose charge.



E146322

Touch the heated seat symbol to cycle through the various heat settings and off. More indicator lights indicate warmer settings.

## **Cooled Seats (If Equipped)**

The cooled seats will only function when the engine is running.



E146309

Touch the cooled seat symbol to cycle through the various cool settings and off. More indicator lights indicate cooler settings.

If the engine falls below 350 RPM while the cooled seats are on, the feature will turn itself off. You will need to reactivate it.

# Auxiliary Power Points

## 12 Volt DC Power Point

### WARNING



Do not plug optional electrical accessories into the cigar lighter socket (if equipped). Improper use of the lighter can cause damage not covered by your warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

Run the vehicle for full capacity use of the power point. To prevent the battery from discharging accidentally:

- Do not use the power point longer than necessary when the vehicle is not running.
- Do not leave devices plugged in overnight or when you park your vehicle for extended periods.

**Note:** *If used when the vehicle is not running, the battery will discharge. There may be insufficient power to restart your vehicle.*

**Note:** *Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power point. This will damage the outlet and blow the fuse.*

**Note:** *Do not hang any type of accessory or accessory bracket from the plug.*

**Note:** *Do not use the power point over the vehicle capacity of 12 volt DC 180 watts or a fuse may blow.*

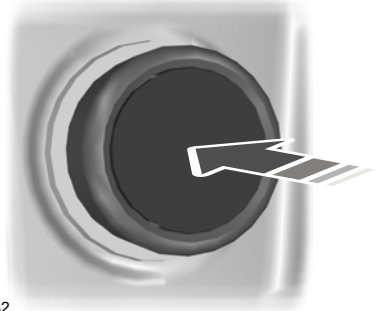
**Note:** *Always keep the power point caps closed when not in use.*

## Locations

Power points may be in the following locations:

- On the instrument panel.
- In the center console storage compartment.

## CIGAR LIGHTER



E103382

Press the element in to use the cigar lighter. It will pop out automatically.

**Note:** *Do not hold the cigar lighter element pressed in.*

**Note:** *If the power supply does not work after you switch the ignition off, switch the ignition on.*

**Note:** *If you use the socket when the engine is not running, the battery may lose charge.*

**Note:** *When you switch the ignition on, you can use the socket to power 12 volt appliances with a maximum current rating of 15 amps.*

# Storage Compartments

## CUP HOLDERS

### WARNINGS



Do not place hot drinks in the cup holders when your vehicle is moving.



Make sure that cups placed in the holders do not obstruct your vision while driving.

## CENTER CONSOLE

Stow items in the cupholder carefully as items may become loose during hard braking, acceleration or collisions, including hot drinks which may spill.

The console includes:

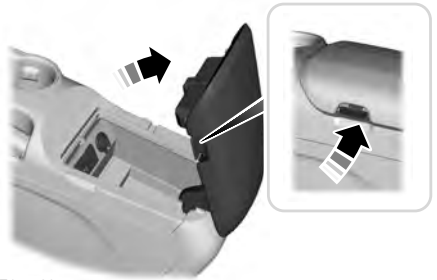
- Cupholder.
- Storage compartment.



E209039

Lift the latch to open the storage compartment and use the following features:

- Auxiliary power point.
- Auxiliary audio input jack.
- USB port.
- Media hub.



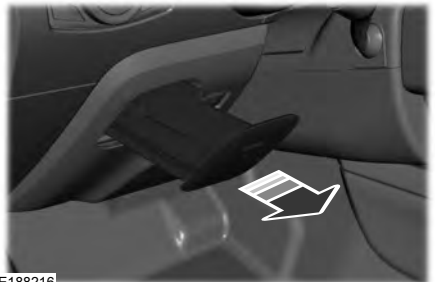
E175706

### Locking Storage Bin (If Equipped)

The storage bin locks when the doors are electronically locked. The bin will unlock when the driver door is electronically unlocked with the remote control.

**Note:** You cannot lock the storage bin when the vehicle is on.

## GLASSES HOLDER



E188216

Press near the center of the door to open it. Pull out the tray.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### WARNINGS



Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.



Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.



Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes can be toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine.



If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately. Do not drive your vehicle if you smell exhaust fumes.

If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 5 miles (8 kilometers) after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

The powertrain control system meets all Canadian interference-causing equipment standard requirements regulating the impulse electrical field or radio noise.

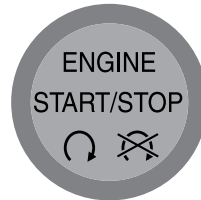
When you start the engine, avoid pressing the accelerator pedal before and during operation. Only use the accelerator pedal when you have difficulty starting the engine.

## KEYLESS STARTING

**Note:** The keyless starting system may not function if the key is close to metal objects or electronic devices such as cellular phones.

**Note:** A valid key must be located inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and start the engine.

### Ignition Modes



E146431

The keyless starting system has three modes:

**Off:** Turns the ignition off.

- Without applying the brake pedal, press and release the button once when the ignition is in the on mode, or when the engine is running but the vehicle is not moving.

**On:** All electrical circuits are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

- Without applying the brake pedal, press and release the button once.

**Start:** Starts the engine.

- Press the brake pedal (automatic transmission) or clutch pedal (manual transmission), and then press the button for any length of time. An indicator light on the button illuminates when the ignition is on and when the engine starts.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## STEERING WHEEL LOCK

Your vehicle has an electronically controlled steering wheel lock that operates automatically.

The system will lock the steering wheel after a short period of time once you have parked your vehicle and the passive key is outside your vehicle, or when you lock your vehicle.

**Note:** *The system will not lock the steering wheel when the ignition is on or while your vehicle is moving.*

## Unlocking the Steering Wheel

Switch the ignition on to unlock the steering wheel.

**Note:** *You may have to rotate the steering wheel slightly to assist unlocking.*

## STARTING A GASOLINE ENGINE

When you start the engine, the idle speed increases, this helps to warm up the engine. If the engine idle speed does not slow down automatically, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

**Note:** *You can crank the engine for a total of 60 seconds (without the engine starting) before the starting system temporarily disables. The 60 seconds does not have to be all at once. For example, if you crank the engine three times for 20 seconds each time, without the engine starting, you reached the 60-second time limit. A message appears in the information display alerting you that you exceeded the cranking time. You cannot attempt to start the engine for at least 15 minutes. After 15 minutes, you are limited to a 15-second engine cranking time. You need to wait 60 minutes before you can crank the engine for 60 seconds again.*

Before starting the engine, check the following:

- Make sure all occupants have fastened their seatbelts.
- Make sure the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Move the transmission selector lever to park (P) (automatic transmission) or neutral (manual transmission)

**Note:** *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*

**Note:** *You must have your intelligent access key in the vehicle in order to shift the transmission out of position P.*

1. Fully press the brake pedal.
2. Press the button.

The system does not function if:

- The key frequencies are jammed.
- The key battery has no charge.

If you are unable to start the engine, do the following:



E174956

1. Remove the rubber covering (A) in the cupholder.
2. Place the remote in the backup slot (B) with the buttons facing up and the keyring toward the front of the vehicle.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

3. With the key in this position, press the brake pedal (automatic transmission) or clutch pedal (manual transmission), then the START button to switch the ignition on and start your vehicle.

## Fast Restart

The fast restart feature allows you to restart the engine within 20 seconds of switching it off, even if a valid key is not present.

Within 20 seconds of switching the engine off, press the brake pedal (automatic transmission) or clutch pedal (manual transmission) and press the button. After 20 seconds have expired, you can no longer restart the engine without the key present inside your vehicle.

Once the engine has started, it remains running until you press the button, even if the system does not detect a valid key. If you open and close a door while the engine is running, the system searches for a valid key. You cannot restart the engine if the system does not detect a valid key within 20 seconds.

## Failure to Start

If you cannot start the engine after three attempts, wait 10 seconds and follow this procedure:

1. If your vehicle is equipped with an automatic transmission, fully press the brake pedal. If your vehicle is equipped with a manual transmission, fully press the clutch pedal and apply the handbrake.
2. Move the transmission selector lever to park (P) (automatic transmission) or neutral (manual transmission).
3. Fully press the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
4. Start the engine.

## Automatic Engine Shutdown

Your vehicle is equipped with a feature that automatically shuts down the engine if it has been idling for an extended period. The ignition also turns off in order to save battery power. Before the engine shuts down, a message appears in the information display showing a timer counting down from 30 seconds. If you do not intervene within 30 seconds, the engine shuts down. Another message appears in the information display to inform you that the engine has shut down in order to save fuel. Start your vehicle as you normally do.

## Automatic Engine Shutdown Override

**Note:** *You cannot permanently switch off the automatic engine shutdown feature. When you switch it off temporarily, it turns on at the next ignition cycle.*

You can stop the engine shutdown, or reset the timer, at any point before the 30-second countdown has expired by doing any of the following:

- You can reset the timer by interacting with your vehicle (such as pressing the brake pedal or accelerator pedal).
- You can temporarily switch off the shutdown feature any time the ignition is on (for the current ignition cycle only). Use the information display to do so. See **Information Displays** (page 67).
- During the countdown before engine shutdown, you are prompted to press OK or RESET (depending on your type of information display) to temporarily switch the feature off (for the current ignition cycle only).

## Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary

1. Move the transmission selector lever to park (P) (automatic transmission) or neutral (manual transmission).



# Starting and Stopping the Engine

2. Press the button once.
3. Apply the parking brake.

**Note:** This switches off the ignition, all electrical circuits, warning lamps and indicators.

**Note:** If the engine is idling for 30 minutes, the ignition and engine automatically shut down.

## Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving

### WARNING



Switching off the engine when the vehicle is still moving will result in a loss of brake and steering assistance. The steering will not lock, but higher effort will be required. When the ignition is switched off, some electrical circuits, including air bags, warning lamps and indicators may also be off. If the ignition was turned off accidentally, you can shift into neutral (N) and re-start the engine.

1. Move the transmission selector lever to the neutral position and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
2. When your vehicle has stopped, move the transmission selector lever to park (P) (automatic transmission) or neutral (manual transmission).
3. Press and hold the button for one second, or press it three times within two seconds.
4. Apply the parking brake.

## Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes

### WARNING



If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle checked by your authorized dealer immediately. Do not drive your vehicle if you smell exhaust fumes. Carbon monoxide is present in exhaust fumes. Take precautions to avoid its dangerous effects.

## Important Ventilating Information

If you stop your vehicle and leave the engine idling for long periods, we recommend that you do one of the following:

- Open the windows at least 2.5 cm (1 in).
- Set your climate control to outside air.

## ENGINE BLOCK HEATER (if

Equipped)

### WARNINGS



Failure to follow engine block heater instructions could result in property damage or serious personal injury.



Do not use your heater with ungrounded electrical systems or two-pronged adapters. There is a risk of electrical shock.

**Note:** The heater is most effective when outdoor temperatures are below 0°F (-18°C).

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

---

The heater acts as a starting aid by warming the engine coolant. This allows the climate control system to respond quickly. The equipment includes a heater element (installed in the engine block) and a wire harness. You can connect the system to a grounded 220–240 volt AC electrical source.

We recommend that you do the following for a safe and correct operation:

- Use an extension cord suitable for use outdoors and in cold temperatures. It should be clearly marked that it is suitable for use with outdoor appliances. Do not use an indoor extension cord outdoors. This could result in an electric shock or become a fire hazard.
- Use as short an extension cord as possible.
- Do not use multiple extension cords.
- Make sure that when in operation, the extension cord plug and heater cord plug connections are free and clear of water. This could cause an electric shock or fire.
- Make sure your vehicle is parked in a clean area, clear of combustibles.
- Make sure the heater, heater cord and extension cord are firmly connected.
- Check for heat anywhere in the electrical hookup once the system has been operating for approximately 30 minutes.
- Make sure the system is unplugged and properly stowed before starting and driving your vehicle. Make sure the protective cover seals the prongs of the block heater cord plug when not in use.
- Make sure the heater system is checked for proper operation before winter.

## Using the Engine Block Heater

The engine block heater plug may be found in one of the following locations:

- Under the hood.
- In the front fog lamp bezel.
- Front lower grille.

Make sure the receptacle terminals are clean and dry prior to use. Clean them with a dry cloth if necessary.

The heater uses 0.4 to 1.0 kilowatt-hours of energy per hour of use. The system does not have a thermostat. It achieves maximum temperature after approximately three hours of operation. Using the heater longer than three hours does not improve system performance and unnecessarily uses electricity.

# Fuel and Refueling

## SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

### WARNINGS



Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.



The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler door (Easy Fuel capless fuel system), do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.



Automotive fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.



Flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity. This can cause a fire if you are filling an ungrounded fuel container.



Fuel ethanol and gasoline may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.



When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the filler neck. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

Observe the following guidelines when handling automotive fuel:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling your vehicle.
- Always turn off the vehicle before refueling.
- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel such as gasoline is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed, call a physician immediately, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be visible for hours.
- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling too much fuel vapor of any kind can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.
- Avoid getting fuel liquid in your eyes. If fuel is splashed in the eyes, remove contact lenses (if worn), flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can also be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If fuel is splashed on the skin, clothing or both, promptly remove contaminated clothing and wash skin thoroughly with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact with fuel liquid or vapor causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking "Antabuse" or other forms of disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing gasoline vapors, or skin contact could cause an adverse reaction. In sensitive individuals, serious personal injury or sickness may result. If fuel is splashed on the skin, promptly wash skin thoroughly with soap and water. Consult a physician immediately if you experience an adverse reaction.

# Fuel and Refueling

## FUEL QUALITY

### WARNINGS



Do not mix gasoline with oil, diesel or other liquids. This could cause a chemical reaction.



Do not use leaded gasoline or gasoline with additives containing other metallic compounds (e.g. manganese-based). They could damage the emission system.

**Note:** We recommend that you use only high quality fuel.

**Note:** We do not recommend the use of additional additives or other engine treatments for normal vehicle use.

Use minimum 95 octane unleaded gasoline that meets the specification defined by EN 228 or the equivalent national specification.

Your vehicle is suitable for use with ethanol blends up to 10% (E5 and E10).

## Long-Term Storage

Most gasoline contains ethanol. We recommend that you fill the fuel tank with fuel that does not contain ethanol if you intend to store your vehicle for more than two months. Alternatively, we recommend that you seek advice from an authorized dealer.

## FUEL FILLER FUNNEL LOCATION

The fuel filler funnel is located in the spare wheel storage tray.

## RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

Running out of fuel can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

If your vehicle runs out of fuel:

- Add a minimum of 5 L (1.1 gal) of fuel to restart the engine. If your vehicle is out of fuel and on a steep slope, more fuel may be required.
- You may need to switch the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. When restarting, cranking time takes a few seconds longer than normal.

## Filling a Portable Fuel Container

Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Only use an approved fuel container to transfer fuel to your vehicle. Place the container on the ground when filling it.
- Do not fill a fuel container when it is inside your vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container when filling it.
- Do not use a device that holds the fuel pump nozzle lever in the fill position.

## Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel Container

### WARNINGS



Do not insert the nozzle of a fuel container or an aftermarket funnel into the fuel system filler neck. This may damage the fuel system filler neck or its seal and cause fuel to run onto the ground.



Do not try to pry open or push open the capless fuel system with foreign objects. This could damage the fuel system and its seal and cause injury to you or others.

# Fuel and Refueling

## WARNINGS



Do not dispose of fuel in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, use the plastic funnel included with your vehicle. See **Fuel Filler Funnel Location** (page 104).

**Note:** Do not use aftermarket funnels as they will not work with the capless fuel system and can damage it.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, do the following:

1. Fully open the fuel tank filler door until it engages and remove the fuel tank filler cap.

**Note:** Capless fuel systems do not have a fuel tank filler cap.

2. Fully insert the plastic funnel into the fuel tank filler pipe opening.



E157452

3. Add fuel to your vehicle from the fuel container.
4. Remove the plastic funnel from the fuel tank filler pipe opening.

5. Replace the fuel tank filler cap and close the fuel tank filler door.
6. Clean the plastic funnel and place it back in your vehicle or properly dispose of it.

**Note:** Extra funnels can be purchased from an authorized dealer if you choose to dispose of the funnel.

## CATALYTIC CONVERTER

### WARNING



Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during use, and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.

## Driving with a Catalytic Converter

### WARNINGS



Avoid running out of fuel.



Do not crank the engine for long periods.



Do not run the engine when a spark plug lead is disconnected.



Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 141).



Do not switch the ignition off when driving.

## REFUELING

### WARNINGS





Fuel vapor burns violently and a fuel fire can cause severe injuries.


# Fuel and Refueling


## WARNINGS


 Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island.


 When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

 Stay outside your vehicle and do not leave the fuel pump unattended when refueling your vehicle. This is against the law in some places.

 Keep children away from the fuel pump; never let children pump fuel.

 Wait at least 10 seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.

 Stop refueling after the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the second time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing.


 Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling.

Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up, which can produce a spark, when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Place approved fuel container on the ground.
- Do not fill a fuel container while it is in the vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container while filling.
- Do not use a device that would hold the fuel pump handle in the fill position.

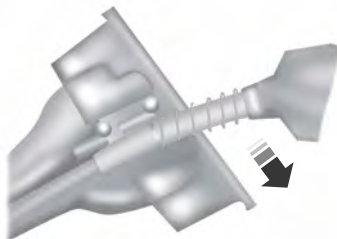
## Easy Fuel™ Capless Fuel System

### WARNING

 The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler door, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

When fueling your vehicle:

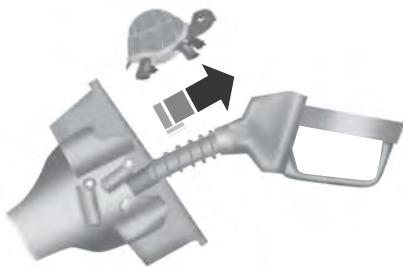
1. When your vehicle has stopped, shift into park (P) and switch the ignition off.
2. Fully open the fuel tank filler door until it engages.



E156032

3. Insert the fuel pump nozzle up to the first notch on the nozzle. Hold handle higher during insertion for easier access. Leave the fuel pump nozzle fully inserted until you are done pumping.

# Fuel and Refueling



E154765

4. Remove the fuel filler nozzle and fully close the fuel tank filler door.

**Note:** A fuel spillage concern may occur if overfilling the fuel tank. Do not overfill the tank. The fill pipe is equipped with a drain hole. Excess fuel due to overfill may drain through the drain hole and drip onto the ground.

If the fuel fill inlet was not properly closed, a service engine warning lamp may appear on the instrument cluster.

At the next opportunity, do the following:

1. Stop your vehicle as soon as safely possible and shift the transmission into park (P).
2. Switch the ignition off.
3. Open the fuel filler door and remove any visible debris from the fuel fill opening.
4. Insert either the fuel fill nozzle or the fuel fill funnel provided with the vehicle several times to allow the inlet to close properly. This will dislodge any debris preventing the inlet from sealing.

If this action corrects the problem, the message may not reset immediately. It may take several driving cycles for the message to turn off. A driving cycle consists of an engine start-up (after 4 or more hours with the engine off) followed by city or highway driving. Continuing to drive with the message on may cause the service engine soon lamp to turn on as well.

## FUEL CONSUMPTION

We derive CO<sub>2</sub> and fuel consumption figures in laboratory tests according to Regulation (EC) 715/2007 or CR (EC) 692/2008 and subsequent amendments.

They are intended as a comparison between makes and models of vehicles. They are not intended to represent the real world fuel consumption you may get from your vehicle.

Real world fuel consumption is governed by many factors, for example driving style, high speed driving, stop-start driving, air conditioning usage, the accessories fitted, payload and towing.

The advertised capacity is the indicated capacity and the empty reserve combined. Indicated capacity is the difference in the amount of fuel in the fuel tank and when the fuel gauge indicates empty. Empty reserve is the amount of fuel in the fuel tank after the fuel gauge indicates empty.

**Note:** The amount of fuel in the empty reserve varies and should not be relied upon to increase driving range. When refueling your vehicle after the fuel gauge indicates empty, you might not be able to refuel the full amount of the advertised capacity due to the empty reserve still present in the fuel tank.

# Fuel and Refueling

---

## Filling the Fuel Tank

For consistent results when refueling:

- Switch the ignition off.
- Allow no more than two automatic shut-offs when refueling.

Results are most accurate when the filling method is consistent.

## Calculating Fuel Economy

Do not measure fuel economy during the first 1,600 km (1,000 mi) of driving (this is your engine's break-in period). A more accurate measurement is obtained after 3,200 km (2,000 mi) to 4,800 km (3,000 mi). Also, fuel expense, frequency of fill ups or fuel gauge readings are not accurate ways to measure fuel economy.

1. Fill the fuel tank completely and record the initial odometer reading.
2. Each time you fill the fuel tank, record the amount of fuel added.
3. After at least three fill ups, fill the fuel tank and record the current odometer reading.
4. Subtract your initial odometer reading from the current odometer reading.

To calculate L/100 km (liters per 100 kilometers) fuel consumption, multiply the liters used by 100, then divide by kilometers traveled. To calculate MPG (miles per gallon) fuel consumption, divide miles traveled by gallons used.

Keep a record for at least one month and record the type of driving (city or highway). This provides an accurate estimate of your vehicle's fuel economy under current driving conditions. Keeping records during summer and winter will show how temperature impacts fuel economy.

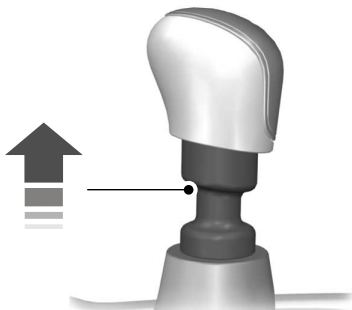


# Transmission

## MANUAL TRANSMISSION

### Selecting Reverse Gear

Do not engage reverse gear when your vehicle is moving. This can cause damage to the transmission.



E99067

Raise the collar when you select reverse gear.

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

### WARNINGS



Always set the parking brake fully and make sure the gearshift is latched in park (P). Turn the ignition to the off position and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.



Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than three seconds will limit engine rpm, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.

## Understanding the Positions of Your Automatic Transmission

### Putting your vehicle in gear:

1. Fully press down the brake pedal.
2. Press and hold the button on the top of the gearshift lever.
3. Move the gearshift lever into the desired gear.
4. Release the button and your transmission remains in the selected gear.



E174572

### Park (P)

This position locks the transmission and prevents the rear wheels from turning. Come to a complete stop before putting your vehicle into and out of park (P).

### Reverse (R)

With the gearshift lever in reverse (R), your vehicle provides backward movement. Always come to a complete stop before shifting into and out of reverse (R).

### Neutral (N)

With the gearshift lever in neutral (N), you can start your vehicle and it is free to roll. Hold the brake pedal down while in this position.

# Transmission

## Drive (D)

For normal driving, and the best fuel economy, drive (D) provides operation in gears one through six.

## Sport (S)

Moving the gearshift lever to Sport (S):

- Provides additional grade (engine) braking and extends lower gear operation to enhance performance for uphill climbs, hilly terrain or mountainous areas. This may increase engine RPM during engine braking.
- Provides additional lower gear operation through the automatic transmission shift strategy.
- Selects gears more quickly and at higher engine speeds.

## SelectShift Automatic™ Transmission

Your SelectShift Automatic transmission gives you the ability to change gears manually.

With your vehicle in drive (D), the paddle shifters provide temporary manual control. They allow you the ability to shift gears quickly, without taking your hands off the steering wheel. The system determines when temporary manual control is no longer in use and returns to automatic control.

You can achieve extensive manual control by moving the gearshift lever to the sport (S) position.



- Pull and release the right paddle (+) to upshift.
- Pull and release the left paddle (-) to downshift.

Upshift to the recommended shift speeds according to the following chart:

<b>Upshifts when accelerating (recommended for best fuel economy)</b>	
Shift from:	
1 - 2	15 mph (24 km/h)
2 - 3	25 mph (40 km/h)
3 - 4	40 mph (64 km/h)
4 - 5	45 mph (72 km/h)
5 - 6	50 mph (80 km/h)

The instrument cluster displays your currently selected gear. The transmission automatically upshifts if your engine speed is too high or downshifts if your engine speed is too low.

The system stays in manual control until you make another gear selection (for example, drive [D]).

**Note:** *Engine damage may occur if excessive engine revving is held without shifting.*

## Brake-Shift Interlock

### WARNINGS



Do not drive your vehicle until you verify that the brake lamps are working.



When doing this procedure, you will be taking your vehicle out of park which means your vehicle can roll freely. To avoid unwanted vehicle movement, always fully set the parking brake prior to doing this procedure. Use wheel chocks if appropriate.

# Transmission

## WARNINGS



If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. See your authorized dealer.

**Note:** Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible if this procedure is used.

**Note:** For some markets, this feature will be disabled.

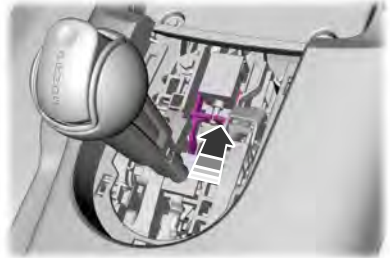
Use the brake shift interlock lever to move the gearshift lever from the park position in the event of an electrical malfunction or if your vehicle has a dead battery.

Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off before performing this procedure.



E184747

1. Using a flat head screwdriver or similar tool, remove the chrome bezel and gearshift bracket at the base of the gearshift lever.



E174501

2. Locate the white release lever and slide the lever forward while pulling the gearshift lever out of the park (P) position and into the neutral (N) position.
3. Reinstall the console.
4. Start your vehicle and release the parking brake.

## Automatic Transmission Adaptive Learning

This feature is designed to increase durability and provide consistent shift feel over the life of your vehicle. A new vehicle or transmission may have firm or soft shifts. This operation is normal and does not affect function or durability of the transmission. Over time, the adaptive learning process will fully update transmission operation. Additionally, whenever you disconnect the battery is or install a new battery, the system must relearn the strategy.

## If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck In Mud or Snow

**Note:** Do not rock your vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature or damage to the transmission may occur.

# Transmission

---

**Note:** *Do not rock your vehicle for more than a minute or damage to the transmission and tires may occur, or the engine may overheat.*

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow, you may rock it out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

# Rear Axle

---

## **LIMITED SLIP DIFFERENTIAL**

This axle provides added traction on slippery surfaces, particularly when one wheel is on a poor traction surface. Under normal conditions, the limited-slip axle functions like a standard rear axle. The axle may exhibit a slight noise or vibration during tight turns with low vehicle speed. This is normal behavior and indicates the axle is working.

# Brakes

## GENERAL INFORMATION

**Note:** Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake linings may be worn-out. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer. If your vehicle has continuous vibration or shudder in the steering wheel while braking, have it checked by an authorized dealer.

**Note:** Brake dust may accumulate on the wheels, even under normal driving conditions. Some dust is inevitable as the brakes wear and does not contribute to brake noise. See **Cleaning the Alloy Wheels** (page 170).

 See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 63).

Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when driving from a car wash or standing water to dry the brakes.

## Brake Over Accelerator

In the event the accelerator pedal becomes stuck or entrapped, apply steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal to slow the vehicle and reduce engine power. If you experience this condition, apply the brakes and bring your vehicle to a safe stop. Move the transmission to park (P), switch the engine off and apply the parking brake. Inspect the accelerator pedal for any interference. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle towed to the nearest authorized dealer.

## Brake Assist

Brake assist detects when you brake rapidly by measuring the rate at which you press the brake pedal. It provides maximum braking efficiency as long as you press the pedal, and can reduce stopping distances in critical situations.

## Anti-lock Brake System

This system helps you maintain steering control during emergency stops by keeping the brakes from locking.



This lamp momentarily illuminates when you turn the ignition on. If the light does not illuminate during start up, remains on or flashes, the system may be disabled. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer. If the anti-lock brake system is disabled, normal braking is still effective.



If the brake warning lamp illuminates when you release the parking brake, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

## HINTS ON DRIVING WITH ANTI-LOCK BRAKES

**Note:** When the system is operating, the brake pedal may pulse and may travel further. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal. You may also hear a noise from the system. This is normal.

The anti-lock braking system will not eliminate the risks when:

- You drive too closely to the vehicle in front of you.
- Your vehicle is hydroplaning.
- You take corners too fast.
- The road surface is poor.

## PARKING BRAKE

### WARNINGS



If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. See your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

# Brakes

## WARNINGS



Always set the parking brake fully and make sure that the transmission is securely latched in park (P) (automatic transmission) or first gear (1) (manual transmission).

To set the parking brake, pull the parking brake handle up as far as possible.

To release the parking brake:

1. Press and hold the button located at the end of the parking brake handle.
2. Pull the handle up slightly, then push the handle down.

## HILL START ASSIST

### WARNINGS



The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake and shift the transmission into park (P) (automatic transmission) or first gear (1) (manual transmission).



You must remain in your vehicle once you have activated the system.



During all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required.



If the engine is revved excessively, or if a malfunction is detected, the system will be deactivated.

The system makes it easier to pull away when your vehicle is on a slope without the need to use the parking brake.

When the system is active, your vehicle will remain stationary on the slope for two to three seconds after you release the brake pedal. This allows you time to move your foot from the brake to the accelerator pedal. The brakes release automatically when the engine has sufficient torque to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the grade. This is an advantage when pulling away on a slope, for example from a car park ramp, traffic lights or when reversing uphill into a parking space.

The system will activate automatically on any slope that will cause significant vehicle rollback. For vehicles with a manual transmission, you can switch this feature off using the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 67). The system will remain on or off depending on how it was last set.

**Note:** *There is no warning lamp to indicate the system is either on or off.*

**Note:** *If your vehicle is equipped with Auto Hold, Hill Start Assist will not be available while Auto Hold is active.*

## Using Hill Start Assist

1. Bring your vehicle to a complete standstill. Keep the brake pedal pressed and select an uphill gear (for example, first (1) when facing uphill or reverse (R) when facing downhill).
2. If the sensors detect that your vehicle is on a slope, the system will activate automatically.
3. When you remove your foot from the brake pedal, your vehicle will remain on the slope without rolling away for about two or three seconds. This hold time will automatically be extended if you are in the process of driving off.
4. Drive off in the normal manner. The brakes will release automatically.

## **Switching the System On and Off**

You can switch this feature on or off if your vehicle is equipped with a manual transmission and an information display. See (page 67). The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

If your vehicle is not equipped with a manual transmission and an information display, you cannot turn the system on or off. When you switch the ignition on, the system automatically turns on.



# Traction Control

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The traction control system helps avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction.

If your vehicle begins to slide, the system applies the brakes to individual wheels and, when needed, reduces engine power at the same time. If the wheels spin when accelerating on slippery or loose surfaces, the system reduces engine power in order to increase traction.

## USING TRACTION CONTROL

### WARNING



The stability and traction control light illuminates steadily if the system detects a failure. Make sure you did not manually disable the traction control system using the switch. If the stability control and traction control light is still illuminating steadily, have the system serviced by an authorized dealer immediately. Operating your vehicle with traction control disabled could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The system automatically turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

If your vehicle is stuck in mud or snow, switching traction control off may be beneficial as this allows the wheels to spin.

**Note:** *When you switch traction control off, stability control remains fully active.*

## Switching the System Off



E166706

The switch for the stability and traction control system is on the instrument panel.

When you switch the system off, a message and an illuminated icon appear on the instrument cluster.

Use the switch again to return the traction control system to normal operation.

Your vehicle may have MyKey restrictions regarding this feature. See (page 35).

## System Indicator Lights and Messages



The stability and traction control light temporarily illuminates on engine start-up and flashes when a driving condition activates either of the systems.



The stability and traction control off light temporarily illuminates on engine start-up and stays on:

- When you switch the traction control system off.
- If a problem occurs in either of the systems.

# Stability Control

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

### WARNINGS



Vehicle modifications involving braking system, aftermarket roof racks, suspension, steering system, tire construction and wheel and tire size may change the handling characteristics of the vehicle and may adversely affect the performance of the stability control system. In addition, installing any stereo loudspeakers may interfere with and adversely affect the stability control system. Install any aftermarket stereo loudspeaker as far as possible from the front center console, the tunnel, and the front seats in order to minimize the risk of interfering with the stability control sensors. Reducing the effectiveness of the stability control system could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



Remember that even advanced technology cannot defy the laws of physics. It's always possible to lose control of a vehicle due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Aggressive driving on any road condition can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of personal injury or property damage. Activation of the stability control system is an indication that at least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road; this could reduce the operator's ability to control the vehicle potentially resulting in a loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. If your stability control system activates, SLOW DOWN.



If a failure has been detected within the traction control system, the stability control light will illuminate steadily. Verify that the traction control system was not manually disabled using the stability control button. If the stability control light still illuminates steadily, have

### WARNINGS

the system serviced by an authorized dealer immediately. Operating your vehicle with traction control disabled could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



The stability and traction control light temporarily lights on engine start-up and flashes when a driving condition activates either of the systems.

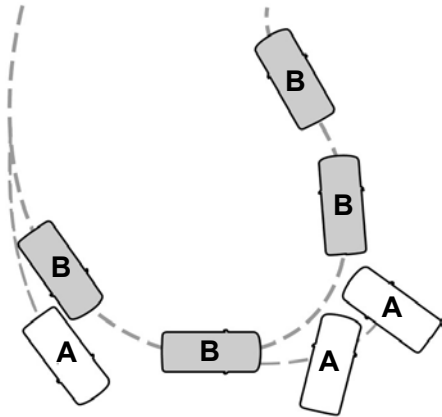


The stability and traction control off light temporarily lights on engine start-up and stays on:

- When you switch the traction control system off.
- When you select an alternative stability control mode.
- If a problem occurs in either of the systems.

The stability control system helps you keep control of your vehicle when on a slippery surface. The electronic stability control portion of the system helps avoid skids and lateral slides. The traction control system helps avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction. See **Using Traction Control** (page 117).

# Stability Control



E72903

A Vehicle without stability control

skidding off its intended route.

B Vehicle with stability control maintaining control on a slippery surface.

## USING STABILITY CONTROL

### Electronic Stability Control

The system automatically turns on each time you switch the ignition on. The electronic stability control portion of the system is disabled when the transmission is in reverse (R) or, on some models, if you press and hold the electronic stability control button for more than five seconds when you apply the brakes and the vehicle is at a stop. You can switch off the traction control portion of the system independently. See **Using Traction Control** (page 117).

ESC features				
Button functions	Mode	Stability control off light	Electronic stability control	Traction control system
Default at start-up	-	On during bulb check	Enabled	Enabled
Button pressed momentarily	Traction control off	On	Enabled	Disabled
Button pressed twice rapidly	Sport mode (if equipped)	On	Enabled	Enabled
Button pressed and held more than five seconds	ESC disabled	On	Disabled	Disabled
Button pressed again after deactivation	ESC fully enabled	Off	Enabled	Enabled

# Stability Control

---

**Note:** Do not use Sport mode on public roadways.

Some models may also come equipped with a sport mode which allows the driver to reduce normal electronic stability control system intervention and provide a more spirited driving experience. To enter sport mode, toggle the stability control button twice rapidly. The message appears in the information display that the system is now in sport mode.

For vehicles equipped with the selectable drive mode feature, electronic stability control sport mode is not available. You can utilize the performance oriented electronic stability control mode by selecting track drive mode. In this mode, electronic stability control intervention is reduced and tuned specifically for track use only and is not for use on public roads. In all of the selectable drive modes, you can disable traction control and electronic stability control with the electronic stability control switch.

## Line Lock (If Equipped)

Line Lock is a feature intended for use at tracks only and should not be used on public roadways. Use of this feature will result in significantly increased rear tire wear. It is intended to condition the rear tires to maximize traction prior to track use. Line Lock maintains brake force at the front wheels, allowing the rear wheels to spin with minimal vehicle movement.

This feature is located in the Track Apps menu. Make selections through the 5-way information display control and OK button located on the steering wheel.

## Using Line Lock

There are three Line Lock stages:

- Initiated.
- Engaged.
- Off.

## Initiating Line Lock

The initiation stage verifies that the vehicle is ready for Line Lock function, and confirms driver intent. Follow the prompts in the information display in to initiate Line Lock.

The following conditions must be met to initialize Line Lock:

- The vehicle is on a level surface.
- The engine is running.
- The vehicle is traveling less than 25 mph (40 km/h).
- Selectable Drive Mode is not in wet mode (if equipped).
- There are no electronic stability control faults.

If you want to cancel Line Lock once it is initialized, press the left information display control. Once initiated, Line Lock is prepared for activation and will remain initiated up to 25 mph (40 km/h). If vehicle speed exceeds 25 mph (40 km/h), Line Lock will be automatically canceled.

## Engaging Line Lock

Follow the prompts in the information display to engage Line Lock after it is initialized. To engage, firmly apply the brakes. Then press the OK button. Once engaged, release the brake pedal. The front brakes will remain applied and the rear brakes will release. At this point, the engagement timer is initiated and shown on the driver information display.

The following conditions must be met to engage Line Lock:

- The vehicle is on a level surface.
- The engine is running.

# Stability Control

---

- The vehicle is stopped.
- The parking brake is not applied.
- The driver door is closed.
- The transmission is in a forward gear.
- Selectable Drive Mode is not in wet mode (if equipped).
- There are no electronic stability control faults.
- The steering wheel must be in the straight ahead position.

## Releasing Line Lock

While Line Lock is engaged, you can exit (release) the feature using the OK button. When you press the OK button, Line Lock releases immediately and normal vehicle function will resume. When Line Lock is engaged, a countdown timer shows the remaining time before Line Lock is released automatically. If you exceed the time limit, or another vehicle condition requires Line Lock to release, the system will safely disengage and normal vehicle function will resume.

**Note:** *If the brake pedal is applied while Line Lock is engaged, Line Lock automatically cancels and normal brake function resumes.*

# Parking Aids

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

### WARNINGS



To help avoid personal injury, please read and understand the limitations of the system as contained in this section. Sensing is only an aid for some (generally large and fixed) objects when moving on a flat surface at parking speeds. Certain objects with surfaces that absorb ultrasonic waves, surrounding vehicle's parking aid systems, traffic control systems, fluorescent lamps, inclement weather, air brakes, and external motors and fans may also affect the function of the sensing system; this may include reduced performance or a false activation.



To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.



This system is not designed to prevent contact with small or moving objects. The system is designed to provide a warning to assist the driver in detecting large stationary objects to avoid damaging your vehicle. The system may not detect smaller objects, particularly those close to the ground.



Certain add-on devices such as large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks and any device that may block the normal detection zone of the system, may create false beeps.

**Note:** *Keep the sensors, located on the bumper or fascia, free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. If the sensors are covered, the system's accuracy can be affected. Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.*

**Note:** *If your vehicle sustains damage to the bumper or fascia, leaving it misaligned or bent, the sensing zone may be altered causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alarms.*

**Note:** *The sensing system cannot be turned off when a MyKey is present. See (page 35).*

**Note:** *If you attach certain add-on devices such as a trailer or bike rack, the rear sensing system may detect that add-on device and therefore provide warnings. It is suggested that you disable the rear sensing system when you attach an add-on device to your vehicle to prevent these warnings.*

The sensing system warns the driver of obstacles within a certain range of your vehicle. The system turns on automatically whenever you switch the ignition on.

The system can be switched off through the information display menu or from the pop-up message that appears once you shift the transmission into reverse (R). See (page 67).

If a fault is present in the system, a warning message appears in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 75).

## REAR PARKING AID

The rear sensors are only active when the transmission is in reverse (R). As your vehicle moves closer to the obstacle, the rate of the audible warning increases. When the obstacle is less than 30 cm (12 in) away, the warning sounds continuously. If the system detects a stationary or receding object farther than 30 cm (12 in) from the corners of the bumper, the tone sounds for only three seconds. Once the system detects an object approaching, the warning sounds again.

# Parking Aids



E130178

Coverage area of up to 1.8 m (6 ft) from the rear bumper. There may be decreased coverage area at the outer corners of the bumper.

The system detects certain objects while the transmission is in reverse (R) :

- Your vehicle is moving toward a stationary object at a speed of 5 km/h (3 mph) or less.
- Your vehicle is not moving, but a moving object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at a speed of 5 km/h (3 mph) or less.
- Your vehicle is moving at a speed of less than 5 km/h (3 mph) and a moving object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at a speed of less than 5 km/h (3 mph).

The system provides audio warnings only when your vehicle is moving or when your vehicle is stationary and the detected obstacle is less than 30 cm (12 in) away from the bumper.

## Obstacle Distance Indicator (if Equipped)

The system provides obstacle distance indication through the information display. The distance indicator displays when the transmission is in reverse (R).

The indicator displays:

- As the distance to the obstacle decreases the indicator blocks illuminate and move towards the vehicle icon.
- If there is no obstacle detected, the distance indicator blocks are greyed out.

## REAR VIEW CAMERA

### WARNINGS



The rear view camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.



You may not see objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper due to the limited coverage of the camera system.



Back up as slow as possible since higher speeds might limit your reaction time to stop your vehicle.



Use caution when using the rear video camera and the luggage compartment is ajar. If the luggage compartment is ajar, the camera will be out of position and the video image may be incorrect. All guidelines are removed when the luggage compartment is ajar.

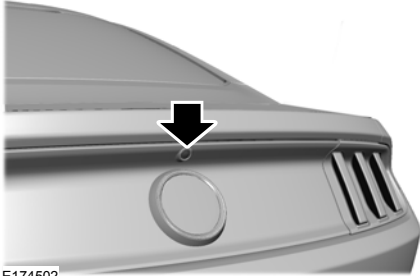


Use caution when turning camera features on or off. Make sure your vehicle is not moving.

# Parking Aids

The rear view camera system provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle.

During operation, lines appear in the display which represent your vehicle's path and proximity to objects behind your vehicle.



E174502

The camera is located on the luggage compartment door.

## Using the Rear View Camera System

The rear view camera system displays what is behind your vehicle when you place the transmission in reverse (R).

**Note:** *The reverse sensing system is not effective at speeds above 5 km/h (3 mph) and may not detect certain angular or moving objects.*

The system uses two types of guides to help you see what is behind your vehicle:

- Fixed guidelines: Show the actual path your vehicle is moving in while reversing in a straight line. This can be helpful when backing into a parking space or aligning your vehicle with another object behind you.
- Centerline: Helps align the center of your vehicle with an object.

**Note:** *If the transmission is in reverse (R) and the luggage compartment is open, no camera features will display.*

The camera may not operate correctly under the following conditions:

- Nighttime or dark areas if the reverse lamps are not operating.
- Mud, water or debris obstructs the camera's view. Clean the lens with a soft, lint-free cloth and non-abrasive cleaner.
- The camera is misaligned due to damage to the rear of your vehicle.

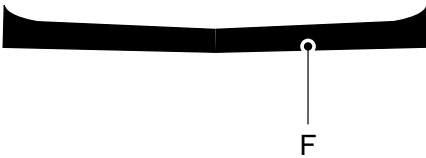
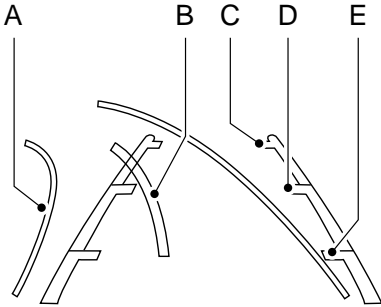
## Camera Guidelines

**Note:** *Active guidelines are only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).*

**Note:** *Upon a battery disconnect, the active guidelines may not be functional until your vehicle has been driven a short distance and exceeds a speed of 20 km/h (12 mph).*



# Parking Aids



E142436

- A Active guidelines
- B Centerline
- C Fixed guideline: Green zone
- D Fixed guideline: Yellow zone
- E Fixed guideline: Red zone
- F Rear bumper

Active guidelines only show with fixed guidelines. To use active guidelines, turn the steering wheel to point the guidelines toward an intended path. If the steering wheel position changes while reversing, your vehicle might deviate from the original intended path.

The fixed and active guidelines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. The active guidelines do not show when the steering wheel position is straight.

Always use caution while reversing. Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects are getting closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of your vehicle.

## Manual Zoom

### WARNING



When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle does not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.

**Note:** Manual zoom is only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).

**Note:** When manual zoom is enabled, only the centerline is shown.

Selectable settings for this feature are Zoom in (+) and Zoom out (-). Press the symbol in the camera screen to change the view. The default setting is Zoom OFF.

This feature allows you to get a closer view of an object behind your vehicle. The zoomed image keeps the bumper in the image to provide a reference. The zoom is only active while the transmission is in reverse (R). When the transmission shifts out of reverse (R), the feature automatically turns off and must be reset when it is used again.

# Parking Aids

## Camera System Settings

To access any of the rear view camera system settings, make the following selections in the multifunctional display when the transmission is not in reverse (R):

<b>Main Menu</b>
Settings
Vehicle
Camera settings

### **Enhanced Park Aids or Park Pilot**

Selectable settings for this feature are ON and OFF.

The system uses red, yellow and green highlights that appear on top of the video image when any of the sensing systems detect an object.

### **Vehicles equipped with touchscreen**

The system will provide an image of your vehicle and the sensor zones. The zones will highlight green, yellow and red when the parking aid sensors detect an object in the coverage area.

The coverage area is up to 1.8 m (6 ft) from the rear bumper. There is decreased coverage area at the outer corners of the bumper.



E130178

For additional information of the zone coverage and the rear sensing system. See **Rear Parking Aid** (page 122).

### **Rear Camera Delay**

Selectable settings for this feature are ON and OFF.

The default setting for the rear camera delay is OFF.

When shifting the transmission out of reverse (R) and into any gear other than park (P), the camera image remains in the display until:

- Your vehicle speed sufficiently increases.
- You shift your vehicle into park (P).
- You pull the hand brake on vehicles with a manual transmission.

# Cruise Control

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

Cruise control lets you maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal. You can use cruise control when your vehicle speed is greater than 30 km/h (20 mph).

## USING CRUISE CONTROL

### WARNINGS

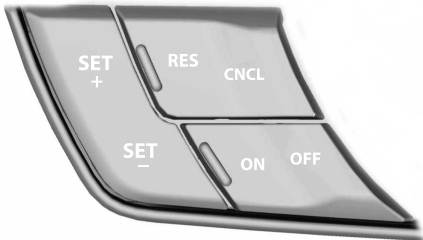


Do not use cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.



When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed may increase above the set speed. The system will not apply the brakes but a warning displays.

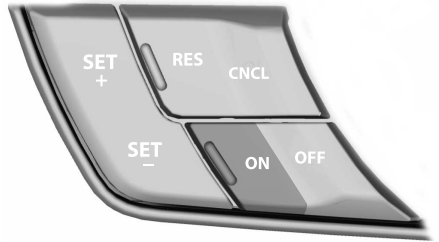
**Note:** *Cruise control will disengage if the vehicle speed decreases more than 16 km/h (10 mph) below the set speed while driving uphill.*



E176993

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel.

## Switching Cruise Control On



E176994

Press and release **ON**.



The indicator appears in the instrument cluster.

## Setting the Cruise Speed

1. Drive to desired speed.
2. Press and release **SET+**.
3. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

## Changing the Set Speed

- Press and release **SET+** or **SET-**. When you select km/h as the display measurement in the information display the set speed changes in approximately 2 km/h increments. When you select mph as the display measurement in the information display the set speed changes in approximately 1 mph increments.
- Press the accelerator or brake pedal until you reach the desired speed. Press and release **SET+**.
- Press and hold **SET+** or **SET-**. Release the control when you reach the desired speed.

# Cruise Control

---

## Canceling the Set Speed

Press and release **CNCL** or tap the brake pedal. The set speed does not erase.

## Resuming the Set Speed

Press and release **RES**.

## Switching Cruise Control Off

Press and release **OFF** when the system is in stand by mode or switch the ignition off.

**Note:** *You erase the set speed when you switch the system off.*

# Driving Aids

## DRIVE CONTROL

### Selectable Drive Modes

Selectable drive modes delivers a driving experience through a suite of sophisticated electronic vehicle systems. These systems optimize steering, handling and powertrain response. This provides a single location to control multiple systems performance settings.

Selectable drive modes consists of the following systems:

- Electronically power-assisted steering adjusts steering effort and feel based on your selected mode.
- Electronic stability control and traction control maintain your vehicle control in adverse conditions or high performance driving. See **Stability Control** (page 118).
- Electronic throttle control enhances the powertrain response to your inputs.

### Using Selectable Drive Modes

Selectable drive modes automatically tailors your vehicle configuration for each mode selected.

**MODE** To change the drive mode setting, toggle the mode button or switch on the instrument panel under the display. The first press of the mode button or switch illuminates the selected mode, subsequent presses will change the selected mode.

**Note:** *Mode changes are not available when the vehicle ignition is off or reverse (R) gear is selected. In gear position drive (D), the available modes are Normal, Sport+, Track and Snow/Wet. In gear position sport (S) Snow/Wet and Normal mode are unavailable.*

Modes:

- Normal – Delivers a balanced combination of comfort and handling. This mode provides an engaging drive experience and a direct connection to the road without sacrificing any of the composure demanded from your vehicle.
- Sport – Engages when you shift your automatic transmission into sport (S). Sport mode increases throttle response and helps your vehicle accelerate faster, but does not change the feel of the steering or stability system.
- Sport+ – Provides a sportier steering feel and throttle response. Sport+ mode is ideal for use during more spirited driving.
- Track – Provides a performance driving experience. The engine responds directly to your inputs and takes on a more powerful tone. Track mode is for use when pure performance is desired. A performance oriented traction control mode is automatically utilized when Track drive mode is selected. In this mode, traction control intervention is reduced and tuned specifically for track usage only and is not intended for public roads. See **Using Stability Control** (page 119).
- Snow/Wet - Provides a confident handling driving experience during poor weather. This mode provides a confident drive experience and a direct connection to the road without sacrificing any of the composure demanded from your vehicle.

# Driving Aids

---

**Note:** *Selectable driving modes has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system to ensure proper operation. Certain selectable drive modes will not be available based on gear shifter position (for example, Snow/Wet is not available while in sport (S) position). If a selected mode is unavailable due to a system fault or change in gear shifter position, the selected mode will default to Normal.*

**Note:** *Collision warning with brake support is automatically disabled when Track mode is selected.*

## Selectable Steering

**Note:** *The steering setting defaults to Normal if the battery is disconnected or removed.*



To change the steering feel, toggle the switch on the instrument panel. The first press illuminates the selected mode, subsequent presses will change the selected mode.

Modes:

- Normal - Default factory setting.
- Sport - Slightly higher effort required for steering with more road force felt through the steering wheel.
- Comfort - Slightly less effort required for steering with less road force felt through the steering wheel.

After selecting the desired setting, you may feel a soft feedback bump in the steering wheel when the changeover occurs.

**Note:** *If your vehicle is equipped with the selectable drive modes feature, the steering feel will change when you select a new drive mode. You can override this automatic selection by pressing the steering button or switch.*

# Load Carrying

---

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### WARNINGS



Use load securing straps to an approved standard, e.g. DIN.



Make sure that you secure all loose items properly.



Place luggage and other loads as low and as far forward as possible within the luggage or loadspace.



Do not drive with the luggage compartment or rear door open. Exhaust fumes may enter your vehicle.



Do not exceed the maximum front and rear axle loads for your vehicle. See **Vehicle Identification Plate** (page 193).



Do not allow items to contact the rear windows.

---

**Note:** *When loading long objects in to your vehicle, for example pipes, timber or furniture be careful not to damage the interior trim.*

# Towing

## TOWING A TRAILER

### WARNING



Your vehicle is not approved for trailer towing. Never tow a trailer with your vehicle.

## TOWING POINTS

### WARNING



The recovery hook has a left-hand thread. Turn it counterclockwise to install it and make sure that it is fully tightened. Failure to do so could result in the recovery hook becoming loose.

The recovery hook is in the spare wheel well.

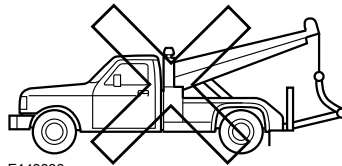
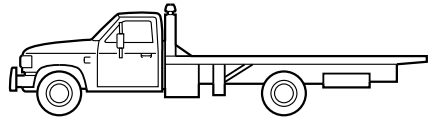
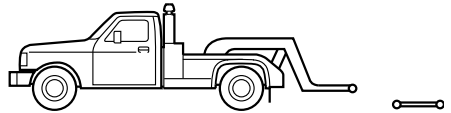
You must carry the recovery hook in your vehicle at all times.



E206299

Remove the cover and install the recovery hook.

## TRANSPORTING THE VEHICLE



E143886

If you need to have your vehicle towed, contact a professional towing service or, if you are a member of a roadside assistance program, your roadside assistance service provider.

We recommend the use of a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment to tow your vehicle. Do not tow with a slingbelt. Ford Motor Company has not approved a slingbelt towing procedure. Vehicle damage may occur if towed incorrectly, or by any other means.

Ford Motor Company produces a towing manual for all authorized tow truck operators. Have your tow truck operator refer to this manual for proper hook-up and towing procedures for your vehicle.



# Towing

---

The rear wheels (drive wheels) must be on a tow dolly when towing your vehicle from the front using wheel lift equipment. This prevents damage to the transmission.

The front wheels should be on a tow dolly when towing your vehicle from the rear using wheel lift equipment. This prevents damage to the front fascia.

## TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS

### Emergency Towing

#### WARNING



If your vehicle has a steering wheel lock make sure the ignition is in the accessory or on position when being towed.

---

You can flat-tow (all wheels on the ground, regardless of the powertrain or transmission configuration) your disabled vehicle (without access to wheel dollies or vehicle transport trailer) under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is facing forward so you tow it in a forward direction.
- You shift into Neutral (N). If you cannot shift into Neutral (N), you may need to override the transmission. See **Transmission** (page 109).
- Maximum speed is 56 km/h (35 mph).
- Maximum distance is 80 km (50 mi).

### Recreational Towing

**Note:** *Put the climate control system in recirculated air mode to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle. See **Climate Control** (page 83).*

Follow these guidelines if you have a need for recreational (RV) towing. An example of recreational towing would be towing your vehicle behind a motorhome. These guidelines are to make sure you do not damage the transmission during towing. Do not tow your vehicle with any wheels on the ground, as vehicle or transmission damage may occur. It is recommended to tow your vehicle with all four wheels off the ground, for example when using a vehicle transport trailer. Otherwise, you cannot tow your vehicle.

## Convertible Top (If Equipped)

### OPENING THE CONVERTIBLE TOP

When you use the top, you must first unlatch it from the windshield and then use the convertible top control.

**Note:** *The convertible top does not operate unless the vehicle is stationary or traveling under 4.8 km/h (3.0 mph). A chime sounds and a warning message appears in the instrument panel. When you slow down, the top operates.*

**Note:** *When you latch or unlatch the convertible top, the audio system mutes briefly. This allows the vehicle to optimize the cabin's sound quality depending on the position of the convertible top.*

To unlatch the convertible top:

1. Bring the vehicle to a complete stop. The ignition must be on. We recommend that the vehicle remains running when you open the top to prevent draining the battery.
2. Check the convertible top stowage compartment behind the rear seat to be sure it is empty. Make sure the convertible top outer surface is free of debris.
3. Move the latch handle, located above the interior mirror, down toward the windshield and rotate the handle clockwise to release the convertible top.



E174571

The windows open automatically when you press the convertible top control.

To open the convertible top:

1. Press and hold the convertible top control, located on the overhead console, until the windows are completely down and the top stores completely.
2. Release the convertible top control.



E174568

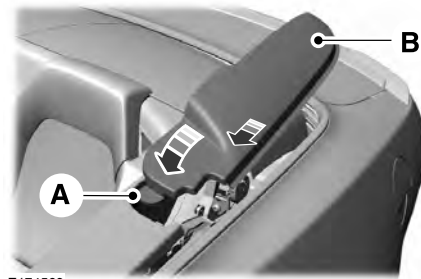
**Note:** *Do not store articles behind rear seat. Articles stored in the convertible top stowage compartment may break the rear glass window when you open the top.*

**Note:** *Opening the convertible top when the top material is wet may cause mold or mildew.*

# Convertible Top (If Equipped)

## Using the Tonneau Caps

Your convertible top also includes two tonneau caps, one for each side of the vehicle. These caps stow inside the trunk.



E174569

A.	Leading edge.
B.	Side edge.

After opening your convertible top, place the tonneau caps between the top and your vehicle trim moulding:

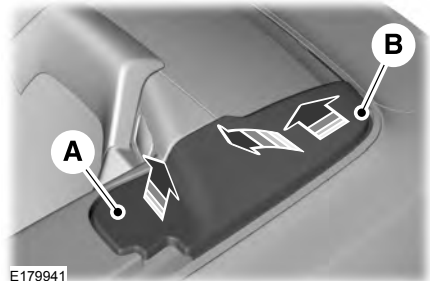
1. Insert A under the trim.
2. When A is under the trim cap, angle B down so the edges slide under the surrounding moulding and secure into place between the trim edges.
3. Repeat Steps 1 and 2 on the opposite side of the vehicle to install the second tonneau cap.

## CLOSING THE CONVERTIBLE TOP

Closing the convertible top is a three-step process: Remove both of the tonneau caps, press the convertible top control to close the top, and then close the latch.

To remove the tonneau caps:

1. Slide B toward the center of the vehicle to release the edges from the surrounding trim.
2. Lift up on B, and then pull the piece back to release A from the trim.
3. Repeat Steps 1 and 2 on the opposite side of the vehicle.
4. Make sure you stow both pieces in the trunk.



E179941

**Note:** The convertible top does not operate unless the vehicle is stationary or traveling under 4.8 km/h (3.0 mph). A chime sounds and a warning message appears in the instrument panel. When you slow down, the top operates.

**Note:** You must remove the tonneau caps before you are able to close the top or a chime sounds and a warning message appears in the instrument panel. Remove and stow the caps, and then press the convertible top control again.

**Note:** When you latch or unlatch the convertible top, the audio system mutes briefly. This allows the vehicle to optimize the cabin's sound quality depending on the position of the convertible top.

## Convertible Top (If Equipped)

To close the convertible top:

1. Stop the vehicle and keep the engine running. We recommend that the vehicle remains running when you open the top to prevent draining the battery.
2. Press and hold the convertible top control. When the convertible latch handle is within reach, make sure it is down and that you rotate it clockwise so the latch is in the fully opened position. Continue pressing the convertible top control until the windows lower completely, and the top unfolds and moves forward toward the windshield header.
3. When the top lines up evenly with the windshield header, release the convertible top control.



E178453

**Note:** If you keep the top open for an extended period of time or if the temperature is low, the top material may shrink slightly. If this happens, pull on the latch handle to secure the top.



E174568

The final step when closing the convertible top is to lock the latch.

To lock the latch on the convertible top:

1. Pull down on the latch handle and rotate it counter-clockwise to secure the convertible top.
2. After securing the convertible top fully, push the latch handle up into the stowed position to secure the latch.

# Driving Hints

---

## BREAKING-IN

### Tires

#### WARNING



New tires need to be run-in for approximately 300 miles (500 kilometers). During this time, you may experience different driving characteristics.

---

### Brakes and Clutch

#### WARNING



Avoid heavy use of the brakes and clutch if possible for the first 100 miles (150 kilometers) in town and for the first 1000 miles (1500 kilometers) on freeways.

---

### Engine

#### WARNING



Avoid driving too fast during the first 1000 miles (1500 kilometers). Vary your speed frequently and change up through the gears early. Do not labor the engine.

---

### Vehicles With a Diesel Engine

During the first 2000 miles (3000 kilometers), you may notice a ticking sound when your vehicle slows down. This is due to adjustments of your new diesel engine and is normal.

## REDUCED ENGINE PERFORMANCE

#### WARNING



Continued operation will increase the engine temperature and cause the engine to shut down completely.

---

If the engine coolant temperature gauge needle moves to the upper limit position, the engine is overheating. See **Gauges** (page 61).

You must only drive your vehicle for a short distance if the engine overheats. The distance you can travel depends on ambient temperature, vehicle load and terrain. The engine will continue to operate with limited power for a short time.

If the engine temperature continues to rise, the fuel supply to the engine will reduce. The air conditioning will switch off and the engine cooling fan will operate continually.

1. Reduce your speed gradually and stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
2. Switch the engine off immediately to prevent severe engine damage.
3. Wait for the engine to cool down.
4. Check the coolant level. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 156).
5. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

## ECONOMICAL DRIVING

The following will help to improve fuel consumption.

### Tire Pressures

Check your tire pressures regularly to optimize fuel economy. For best results use the economy pressures. See **Technical Specifications** (page 189).

### Gear Shifting

Use the highest drivable gear appropriate for the road conditions.

# Driving Hints

## Anticipation

Adjust your vehicle speed and the distance to other vehicles without the need for heavy braking or acceleration.

## Efficient Speed

Higher speeds use more fuel. Reduce your cruising speed on open roads.

## Accessories

Try not to add unnecessary accessories to the exterior of your vehicle. If you use a roof rack, remember to fold it down or remove it when not in use.

## Electrical Systems

Switch off all electrical systems when not in use, for example air conditioning. Make sure you unplug any accessories from the auxiliary power points when not in use.

## COLD WEATHER PRECAUTIONS

The functional operation of some components and systems can be affected at temperatures below -25°C (-13°F).

## DRIVING THROUGH WATER

### WARNING



Do not drive through flowing or deep water as you may lose control of your vehicle.

**Note:** *Driving through standing water can cause vehicle damage.*

**Note:** *Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.*

Before driving through standing water, check the depth. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the front rocker area of your vehicle.



E176360

When driving through standing water, drive very slowly and do not stop your vehicle. Your brake performance and traction may be limited. After driving through water and as soon as it is safe to do so:

- Lightly press the brake pedal to dry the brakes and to check that they work.
- Check that the horn works.
- Check that the exterior lights work.
- Turn the steering wheel to check that the steering power assist works.

## FLOOR MATS

### WARNINGS



Always use floor mats that are designed to fit the foot well of your vehicle. Only use floor mats that leave the pedal area unobstructed. Only use floor mats that are firmly secured to retention posts so that they cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals or impair safe operation of your vehicle in other ways.

# Driving Hints

## WARNINGS



Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.



Always make sure that the floor mats are properly attached to the retention posts in the carpet that are supplied with your vehicle. Floor mats must be properly secured to both retention posts to make sure mats do not shift out of position.



Never place floor mats or any other covering in the vehicle foot well that cannot be properly secured to prevent them from moving and interfering with the pedals or the ability to control the vehicle.



Never place floor mats or any other covering on top of already installed floor mats. Floor mats should always rest on top of vehicle carpeting surface and not another floor mat or other covering. Additional floor mats or any other covering will reduce the pedal clearance and potentially interfere with pedal operation.



Check attachment of floor mats on a regular basis. Always properly reinstall and secure floor mats that have been removed for cleaning or replacement.



Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while the vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.



Failure to properly follow floor mat installation or attachment instructions can potentially cause interference with pedal operation causing a loss of vehicle control.



E142666

To install floor mats, position the floor mat so that the eyelet is over the retention post and press down to lock in.

To remove the floor mat, reverse the installation procedure.

# Roadside Emergencies

## HAZARD WARNING FLASHERS

**Note:** *The hazard warning flashers will operate when the ignition is in any position or if the key is not in the ignition. If used when the engine is not running, the battery will lose charge. As a result, there may be insufficient power to restart your engine.*



The hazard flasher control is located on the instrument panel by the radio. Use it when your vehicle is disabled and is creating a safety hazard for other motorists.

- Press the flasher control and all front and rear direction indicators flash.
- Press the flasher control again to turn them off.

## FIRST AID KIT

The first aid kit can be stowed under the front passenger seat or in the luggage compartment.

## WARNING TRIANGLE

The warning triangle can be stowed under the front passenger seat.

## FUEL SHUTOFF

### WARNING



Failure to inspect and, if necessary, repair fuel leaks after a collision may increase the risk of fire and serious injury. Ford Motor Company recommends that the fuel system be inspected by an authorized dealer after any collision.

In the event of a moderate to severe collision, this vehicle includes a fuel pump shut-off feature that stops the flow of fuel to the engine. Not every impact will cause a shut-off.

Should your vehicle shut off after a collision, you may restart your vehicle. For vehicles equipped with a push button start system:

1. Press the **START/STOP** button to switch off the ignition.
2. Press the brake pedal and press the **START/STOP** button to switch on the ignition.
3. Remove your foot from the brake or clutch pedal and press the **START/STOP** button to switch off the ignition.
4. Press the brake or clutch pedal and the **START/STOP** button, or switch on the ignition only by pressing the **START/STOP** button without pressing the brake or clutch pedal. Both ways re-enable the fuel system.

**Note:** *When you try to restart your vehicle after a fuel shutoff, the vehicle makes sure that various systems are safe to restart. Once your vehicle determines that the systems are safe, then the vehicle will allow you to restart.*


**Note:** *In the event that your vehicle does not restart after your third attempt, contact an authorized dealer.*





# Roadside Emergencies

## JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE

### WARNINGS

 Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.

 Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.

 Use only adequately sized cables with insulated clamps.

### Preparing Your Vehicle

**Note:** Do not attempt to push-start your automatic transmission vehicle. Attempting to push-start a vehicle with an automatic transmission may cause transmission damage.


**Note:** Use only a 12-volt supply to start your vehicle.

**Note:** Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle as this could damage the vehicles electrical system.

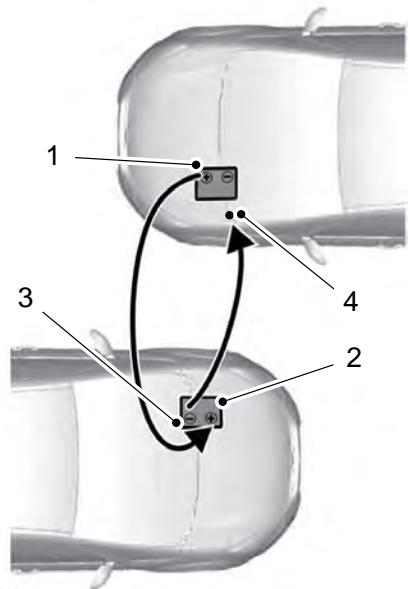
Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle, making sure the two vehicles do not touch. Switch off all accessories.

## Connecting the Jumper Cables

### WARNING

 Do not attach the cables to fuel lines, engine rocker covers, the intake manifold or electrical components as grounding points. Stay clear of moving parts. To avoid reverse polarity connections, make sure that you correctly identify the positive (+) and negative (-) terminals on both the disabled and booster vehicles before connecting the cables.

**Note:** In the illustration, the bottom vehicle represents the booster vehicle.



E142664

1. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the discharged battery.

# Roadside Emergencies

2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
3. Connect the negative (-) cable to the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) cable to an exposed metal part of the stalled vehicle's engine, away from the battery and the fuel injection system, or connect the negative (-) cable to a ground connection point if available.



E204033

**Note:** You can use the optional connection point location shown above to ground your vehicle.

## WARNING



Do not connect the end of the second cable to the negative (-) terminal of the battery to be jumped.

A spark may cause an explosion of the gases that surround the battery.

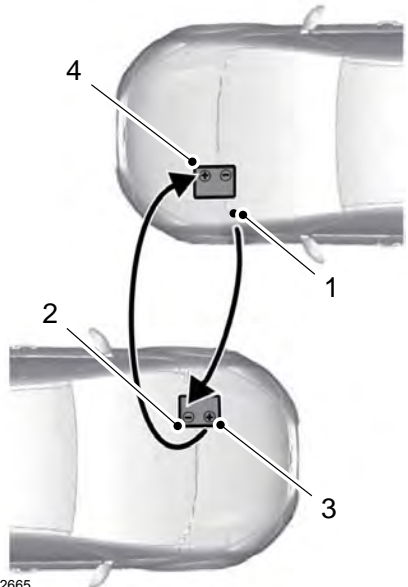
## Jump Starting

1. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and rev the engine moderately, or press the accelerator gently to keep your engine speed between 2000 and 3000 RPM as shown in your tachometer.
2. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.

3. Once the disabled vehicle has been started, run both vehicle engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

## Removing the Jumper Cables

Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.



E142665

1. Remove the jumper cable from the ground metal surface or connecting point, if available.
2. Remove the negative (-) jumper cable from the disabled vehicle.
3. Remove the jumper cable on the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
4. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.

# Roadside Emergencies

---

5. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the disabled vehicle battery.

Allow the engine to idle for at least one minute.

## **POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM**

The system flashes the direction indicator lamps in the event of a serious impact that deploys an airbag (front, side, side curtain or Safety Canopy) or the seatbelt pretensioners.

The lamps turn off when:

- You press the hazard control button.
- You press the panic button (if equipped) on the remote entry transmitter.
- Your vehicle runs out of power.

# Fuses

## FUSE SPECIFICATION CHART

### Power Distribution Box

#### WARNINGS



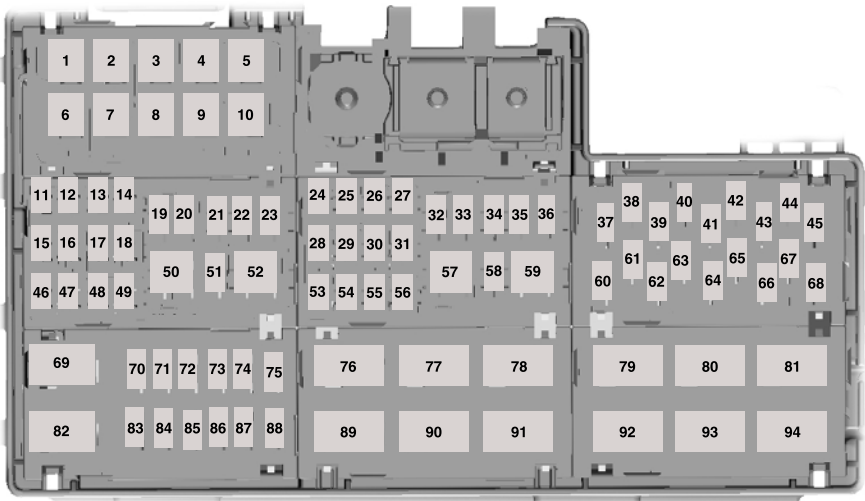
Always disconnect the battery before servicing high current fuses.



To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the power distribution box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.

The power distribution box is located in the engine compartment. It has high-current fuses that protect your vehicle's main electrical systems from overloads.

If you disconnect and reconnect the battery, you will need to reset some features. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 159).



E174563

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
1	—	Not used.
2	—	Not used.
3	—	Not used.

## Fuses

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
4	—	Not used.
5	50A*	Automatic brake system pump.
6	50A*	Body control module.
7	60A*	Body control module.
8	50A*	Body control module.
9	40A*	Rear window defroster.
10	40A*	Blower motor.
11	30A**	Left-hand front window.
12	30A**	Driver seat.
13	30A**	Passenger seat.
14	30A**	Climate-controlled seat module.
15	20A**	Convertible top motor.
16	—	Not used.
17	20A**	Convertible top motor.
18	—	Not used.
19	20A***	Steering column lock relay.
20	10A***	Brake on-off switch.
21	20A***	Horn.
22	10A***	Powertrain control module relay.
23	10A***	Air conditioning clutch.
24	30A**	Voltage quality module.
25	—	Not used.
26	25A**	Windshield wiper motor.
27	—	Not used.
28	30A**	Automatic brake system valve.
29	30A**	Electronic fan 1.
30	30A**	Starter motor solenoid.

# Fuses

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
31	40A**	Electronic fan 3.
32	10A***	Latch relay coil.
33	20A***	Left-hand high-intensity discharge head-lamps.
34	—	Not used.
35	20A***	Right-hand high-intensity discharge head-lamps.
36	10A***	Alt sense.
37	—	Not used.
38	20A***	Vehicle power 1.
39	—	Not used.
40	20A***	Vehicle power 2.
41	15A***	Fuel injectors.
42	15A***	Vehicle power 3.
43	—	Not used.
44	15A***	Vehicle power 4.
45	—	Not used.
46	—	Not used.
47	—	Not used.
48	—	Not used.
49	30A**	Fuel pump.
50	—	Steering column lock relay.
51	—	Not used.
52	—	Horn relay.
53	20A**	Cigar lighter.
54	20A**	Auxiliary power point.
55	25A**	Electronic fan 2.
56	—	Not used.

## Fuses

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
57	—	Air conditioning clutch relay.
58	—	Not used.
59	—	Not used.
60	5A***	Powertrain control module.
61	—	Not used.
62	5A***	Anti-lock brakes run-start switch.
63	—	Not used.
64	5A***	Electronic power assist steering.
65	—	Not used.
66	5A***	Rear view camera. Air conditioning compressor relay coils.
67	—	Not used.
68	10A***	Headlamp leveling switch.
69	—	Auxiliary power point relay.
70	10A***	Heated exterior mirrors.
71	—	Not used.
72	5A***	Rain sensor module.
73	—	Not used.
74	5A***	Mass air flow sensor.
75	—	Not used.
76	—	Rear window defroster.
77	—	Electronic cooling fan 2.
78	—	Left-hand high-intensity discharge headlamp relay.
79	—	Right-hand high-intensity-discharge headlamp relay.
80	—	Windshield wiper relay.
81	—	Starter motor solenoid.

# Fuses

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
82	—	Powertrain control module relay.
83	—	Not used.
84	—	Not used.
85	—	Not used.
86	—	Not used.
87	—	Not used.
88	—	Not used.
89	—	Electronic fan 1 relay.
90	—	Not used.
91	—	Electronic fan 3 relay.
92	—	Blower motor relay.
93	—	Not used.
94	—	Fuel pump relay.

\*J-case fuses.

\*\*M-case fuses.

\*\*\*Micro fuses.

## Passenger Compartment Fuse Panel

The fuse panel is in the right-hand side of the passenger footwell behind a trim panel and plastic key code card.

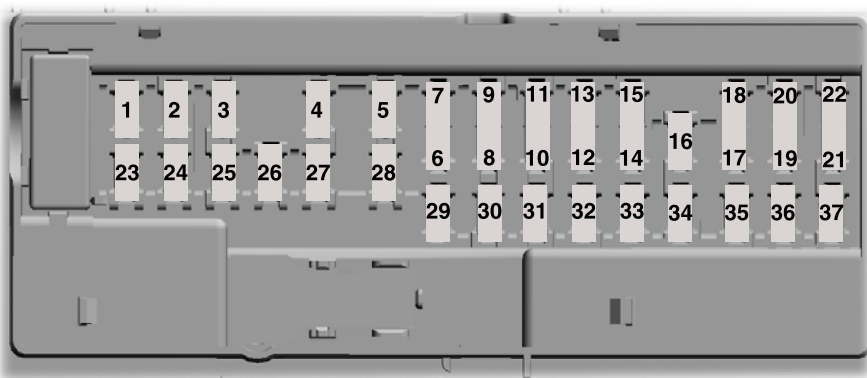
To remove the trim panel, lift it from the rear retaining hooks, while pulling it toward you and swinging it away from the side. To reinstall it, line up the tabs with the grooves on the panel, drop the panel back into place, and then push it shut.

To reach the fuse panel, first remove the key code card.

After replacing a fuse, return the key code card to the original position. To reinstall the trim panel, lineup the tabs with the grooves on the panel, drop the panel back into place, and then push it shut to reinstall the trim panel.



# Fuses



E174564

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
1	10A	Demand lamps.
2	7.5A	Power mirror memory module.
3	20A	Driver console unlock.
4	5A	Not used.
5	20A	Subwoofer amplifier.
6	10A	Not used (spare).
7	10A	Not used (spare).
8	10A	Not used (spare).
9	10A	Not used (spare).
10	5A	Not used (spare).
11	5A	Not used (spare).

# Fuses

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
12	7.5A	Climate control module.
13	7.5A	Gateway module. Steering column control module. Instrument cluster.
14	10A	Not used (spare).
15	10A	Gateway module.
16	15A	Decklid release.
17	5A	Battery backed sounder.
18	5A	Intrusion sensor module.
19	7.5A	Passenger airbag deactivation indicator.
20	7.5A	Not used (spare).
21	5A	In-vehicle temperature and humidity sensor.
22	5A	Occupant classification system module.
23	10A	Switches. Power windows. Rear-view mirror.
24	20A	Central lock unlock.
25	30A	Not used (spare).
26	30A	Right-hand front-window motor.
27	30A	Amplifier.
28	20A	Auxiliary body module.
29	30A	Left-hand rear-window power.
30	30A	Right-hand rear-window power.
31	15A	Not used (spare).
32	10A	Remote keyless entry. Multi-function display. SYNC. Global positioning system module. Gauges.
33	20A	Audio head unit.

# Fuses

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
34	30A	Run-start bus.
35	5A	Restraints control module.
36	15A	Auxiliary body module.
37	15A	Power distribution box run-start bus.
—	30A	Not used (spare).

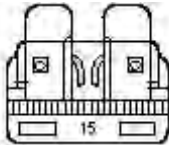
## CHANGING A FUSE

### Fuses

#### WARNING



You must replace a failed fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. If you use a fuse with a higher amperage rating, you may cause severe wire damage and may start a fire.



E142430

A fuse may fail if electrical components in the vehicle are not properly working. A broken wire inside the fuse indicates a failed fuse. Check the appropriate fuses before replacing any electrical components.

# Maintenance

## GENERAL INFORMATION

Have your vehicle serviced regularly to help maintain its roadworthiness and resale value. There is a large network of Ford authorized repairers that are there to help you with their professional servicing expertise. Authorized repairers are best qualified to service your vehicle properly and expertly, with a wide range of highly specialized tools.

In addition to regular servicing, we recommend that you carry out the following checks.

### WARNINGS



Switch the ignition off before touching or attempting adjustment of any kind.



Do not touch the electronic ignition system parts after you have switched the ignition on or when the engine is running. The system operates at high voltage.



Keep your hands and clothing clear of the engine cooling fan. Under certain conditions, the fan may continue to run for several minutes after you have switched the engine off.



Make sure that you fit filler caps securely after carrying out maintenance checks.

## Daily Checks

- Exterior lamps.
- Interior lamps.
- Warning lamps and indicators.

## Check When Refueling

- Brake fluid level. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 158).
- Washer fluid level. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 158).

- Tire pressures (when cold). See **Technical Specifications** (page 189).
- Tire condition. See **Wheels and Tires** (page 171).

## Monthly Checks

- Engine oil level. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 156).
- Engine coolant level (engine cold). See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 156).
- Pipes, hoses and reservoirs for leaks.
- Air conditioning operation.
- Parking brake operation.
- Horn operation.
- Tightness of lug nuts. See **Technical Specifications** (page 189).

## OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD

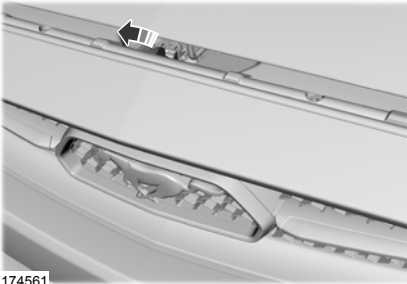
### Opening the Hood



E142457

1. Inside the vehicle, pull the hood release handle located under the left-hand side of the instrument panel.
2. Slightly lift the hood.

# Maintenance



E174561

3. Release the hood latch by pushing the secondary release lever to your left-hand side.



E87786

4. Open the hood. Support the hood with the strut.

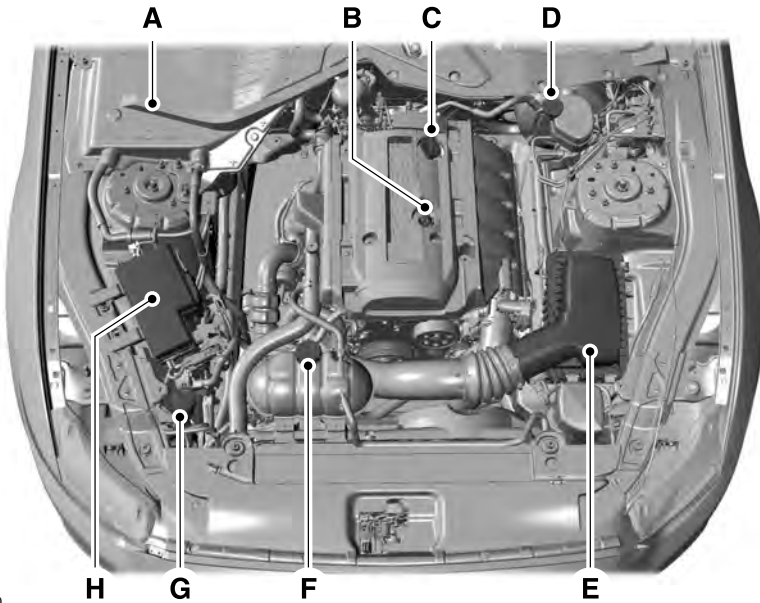
## Closing the Hood

1. Remove the hood strut from the catch and secure it correctly after use.
2. Lower the hood and allow it to drop under its own weight for the last 20–30 cm (8–12 in).

**Note:** Make sure that the hood is correctly closed.

# Maintenance

## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 2.3L ECOBOOST™

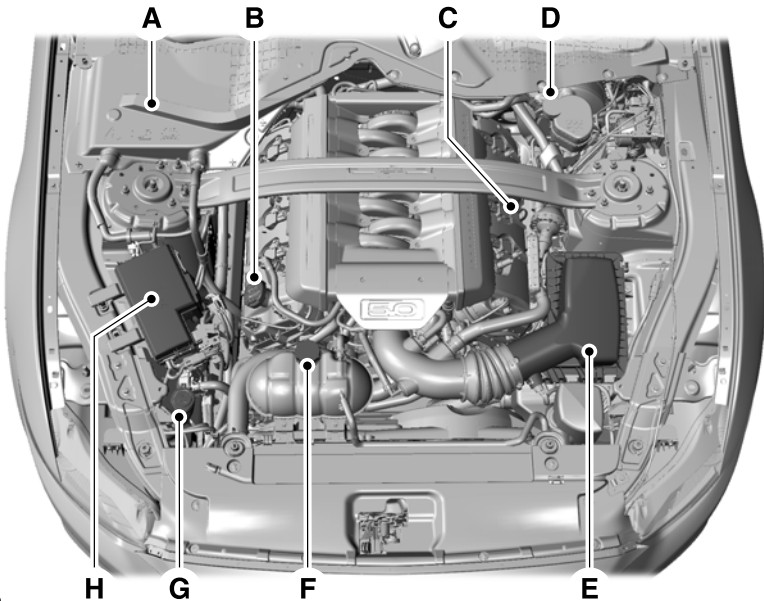


E174450

- A Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 159).
- B Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 156).
- C Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 156).
- D Brake fluid reservoir. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 158).
- E Air cleaner assembly.
- F Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 156).
- G Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 158).
- H Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuses** (page 144).

# Maintenance

## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 5.0L



E174560

- A. Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 159).
- B. Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 156).
- C. Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 156).
- D. Brake fluid reservoir. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 158).
- E. Air cleaner assembly.
- F. Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 156).
- G. Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 158).
- H. Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuses** (page 144).

# Maintenance

## ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK



E161560

- A MIN  
B MAX

## ENGINE OIL CHECK

1. Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.
2. Check the oil level before starting the engine, or switch the engine off and wait 10 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.
3. Remove the dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint free cloth. Replace the dipstick and remove it again to check the oil level.

If the oil level is at the minimum mark, add oil immediately. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 194).



**Note:** Make sure that the oil level is between the minimum and the maximum marks.

**Note:** Do not use oil additives or other engine treatments. Under certain conditions they may cause engine damage.

**Note:** The oil consumption of new engines reaches its normal level after approximately 5,000 km (3,000 mi).

## Adding Engine Oil

### WARNINGS

-  Only add oil when the engine is cold. If the engine is hot, wait 10 minutes for the engine to cool down.
-  Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.



1. Remove the engine oil filler cap. See **Maintenance** (page 152).
2. Add engine oil that meets Ford specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 194).
3. Replace the engine oil filler cap. Turn it until you feel a strong resistance.

**Note:** Do not add oil further than the maximum mark. Oil levels above the maximum mark may cause engine damage.

**Note:** Soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately.

## ENGINE COOLANT CHECK

### WARNINGS

-  Do not dispose of engine coolant in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.
-  Do not put engine coolant in the windshield washer fluid container. If sprayed on the windshield, engine coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.



# Maintenance



E169064

Make sure that the coolant level is between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the coolant reservoir. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add coolant immediately.

The coolant concentration should be maintained within 48% to 50%, which equates to a freeze point between -30°F (-34°C) and -34°F (-37°C).

**Note:** Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may extend beyond the **MAX** mark.

**Note:** Do not use stop leak pellets, cooling system sealants or additives as they can cause damage to the engine cooling or heating systems.

## Adding Engine Coolant

### WARNINGS



Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.



Only add coolant when the engine is cold. If the engine is hot, wait 10 minutes for the engine to cool down.



Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.



Undiluted coolant is flammable and may ignite if spilled on a hot exhaust.

Ford Motor Company does not recommend the use of recycled engine coolant since a Ford-approved recycling process is not yet available.

Do not mix different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle.

**Note:** Add a 50/50 mixture of antifreeze and water or prediluted engine coolant that meets the correct specification.

**Note:** Use fluids which meet the specifications or requirements defined. Use of other fluids may lead to damage which is not covered by your vehicle's Warranty. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 191).

To top up the coolant level do the following:

1. Remove the coolant reservoir cap.
2. Add engine coolant to the MAX mark, do not overfill.
3. Replace the coolant reservoir cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

**Note:** In case of emergency, you can add water without engine coolant in order to reach a vehicle service location.

**Note:** Prolonged use of an incorrect dilution of engine coolant can cause engine damage, such as corrosion, overheating or freezing.

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID CHECK

If required, have an authorized dealer check and change the transmission fluid at the correct service interval.

The automatic transmission does not have a transmission fluid dipstick.





# Maintenance

Refer to your scheduled maintenance information for scheduled intervals for fluid checks and changes. Your transmission does not consume fluid. However, if the transmission slips, shifts slowly or if you notice a sign of leaking fluid, contact an authorized dealer.

Do not use supplemental transmission fluid additives, treatments or cleaning agents. The use of these materials may affect transmission operation and result in damage to internal transmission components.

## BRAKE FLUID CHECK

### WARNINGS

-  Do not use any fluid other than the recommended brake fluid as this will reduce brake efficiency. Use of incorrect fluid could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.
-  Only use brake fluid from a sealed container. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage or failure. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.
-  Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.
-  A fluid level between the **MAX** and **MIN** lines is within the normal operating range and there is no need to add fluid. A fluid level not in the normal operating range could compromise the performance of the system. Have your vehicle checked immediately.



E170684

To avoid fluid contamination, the reservoir cap must remain in place and fully tight, unless you are adding fluid.

Only use fluid that meets Ford specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 191).

## CLUTCH FLUID CHECK - MANUAL TRANSMISSION

The clutch and brake systems share the same fluid reservoir. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 158).

## WASHER FLUID CHECK

When adding fluid, use a mixture of washer fluid and water to help prevent freezing in cold weather and improve the cleaning capability. For information on fluid dilution, refer to the product instructions.

# Maintenance

---

## FUEL FILTER

Your vehicle is equipped with a lifetime fuel filter that is integrated with the fuel tank. Regular maintenance or replacement is not needed.

## CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY

### WARNINGS



Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.



When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.



Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.



Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash hands after handling.



For vehicles with Auto-Start-Stop the battery requirement is different. You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.

The battery is located in the engine compartment. See **Under Hood Overview** (page 154).

Your vehicle has a maintenance-free battery. It does not require additional water during service.

If your vehicle battery has a cover, make sure you correctly install it after cleaning or replacing the battery.

For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry and the battery cables tightly fastened to the battery terminals. If any corrosion is present on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.

We recommend that you disconnect the negative battery cable terminal from the battery if you plan to store your vehicle for an extended period.

To maintain correct operation of the battery management system, if you add any electrical devices to your vehicle, do not connect the ground connection directly to the negative battery terminal. A connection at the negative battery terminal can cause inaccurate measurements of the battery condition and potential incorrect system operation.

**Note:** *Electrical accessories or components added to your vehicle by you or an authorized dealer, may adversely affect battery performance, durability and the performance of other electrical systems on your vehicle.*

If a replacement battery is required, we recommend you use a Ford replacement battery that matches the electrical requirements of your vehicle.

# Maintenance

If you disconnect or replace the battery and your vehicle has an automatic transmission, transmission must relearn its adaptive strategy. Because of this, the transmission may shift firmly when first driven. This is normal operation while the transmission fully updates its operation to optimum shift feel.

## Remove and Reinstall the Battery

To disconnect or remove the battery, do the following:

1. Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.
2. Switch all electrical equipment off, for example lights and radio.
3. Wait a minimum of two minutes before disconnecting the battery.
4. Disconnect the negative battery cable terminal first.
5. Disconnect the positive battery cable terminal last.
6. Remove the battery securing clamp.
7. Remove the battery.
8. Install in the reverse order.\*\*

\*The engine management system has a power hold function and remains powered for a period after you switch the ignition off. This is to allow diagnostic and adaptive tables to be stored. Disconnecting the battery without waiting can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

\*\*Before reconnecting the battery, make sure the ignition remains switched off.

**Note:** *If you only disconnect the negative battery cable terminal, make sure it is isolated or placed away from the battery terminal to avoid un-intended connection or arcing.*

**Note:** *Make sure the battery cable terminals are fully tightened.*

**Note:** *If you disconnect or replace the battery, you must reset the clock and the pre-set radio stations once the battery is reconnected.*

## Battery Disposal



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

## CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES



E142463

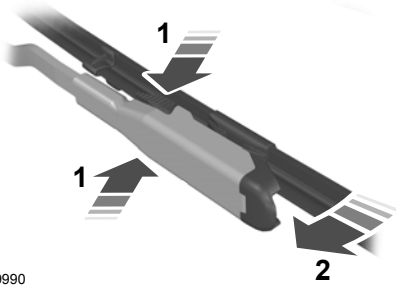
Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

## CHANGING THE WIPER BLADES - LHD

1. Pull the wiper blade and arm away from the glass and press the locking buttons together.

# Maintenance



E129990

2. Rotate and remove the wiper blade.
3. Attach the new blade to the arm and snap it into place.

Replace wiper blades at least once per year for optimum performance.

Poor wiper quality can be improved by cleaning the wiper blades and the windshield.

## CHANGING THE WIPER BLADES - RHD

Replace the wiper blades at least annually for optimum performance.

You can improve poor wiper quality by cleaning the wiper blades and the windshield.

### Service Position

**Note:** Do not hold the wiper blade when moving the wiper arm to the service position.



E211254

Set the windshield wipers in the service position to change the wiper blades. You can manually move the wiper arms to the service position when you switch the ignition off. The windshield wipers return to the starting position when you switch the ignition on.

1. Switch the ignition off.
2. Manually move the wiper arms to the service position.

**Note:** You cannot move the wiper arms to the service position manually when you switch the ignition on.

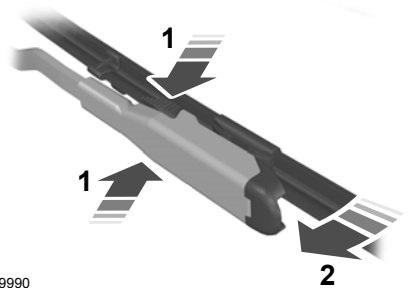
**Note:** You can use the service position to provide easier access to the wiper blades for freeing them from snow and ice.

**Note:** Make sure the windshield is free from snow and ice before you switch the ignition on.

## Changing the Windshield Wiper Blades

**Note:** Do not hold the wiper blade when lifting the wiper arm.

**Note:** Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.



E129990

1. Lift the wiper arm and then press the wiper blade locking buttons together.
2. Slightly rotate the wiper blade.

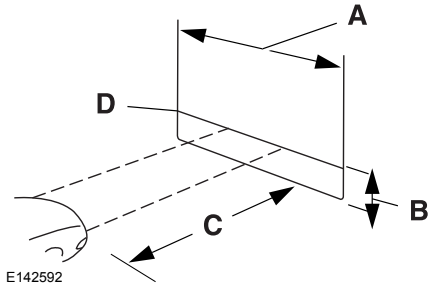
# Maintenance

3. Remove the wiper blade.
4. Install in the reverse order.

## ADJUSTING THE HEADLAMPS - LHD

### Vertical Aim

#### Headlamp Aim Target



E142592

- A 8 ft (2.4 m).
- B Center height of lamp to ground.
- C 25 ft (7.6 m).
- D Horizontal reference line.

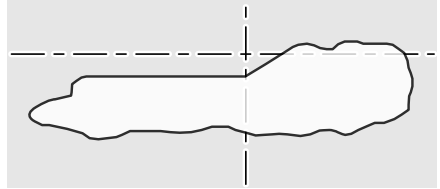
### Vertical Aim Adjustment

1. Park your vehicle on a level surface approximately 7.6 m (25 ft) away from a vertical wall or screen.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Measure the height from the center of the headlamp to the ground.

**Note:** There may be an identifying mark on the lens to help you locate the center of the headlamp bulb.

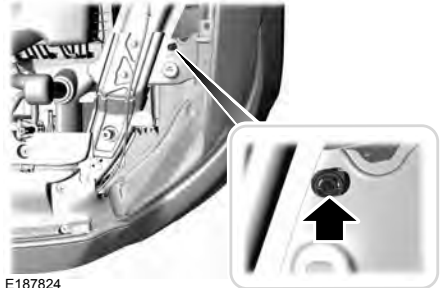
4. Mark a horizontal reference line on the vertical wall or screen that is a minimum of 2.4 m (8 ft) long.

5. Switch the low beam headlamps on and open the hood.



E209825

6. There is a distinct change from light to dark in the left-hand portion of the headlamp beam pattern. Position the top edge of this cut-off 7.5 cm (3 in) below the horizontal reference line.



E187824

7. To adjust the vertical aim, use a suitable tool to rotate the adjuster clockwise or counterclockwise.

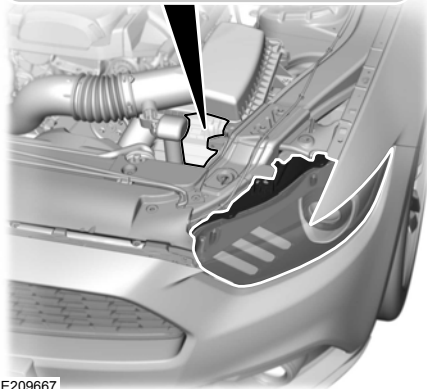
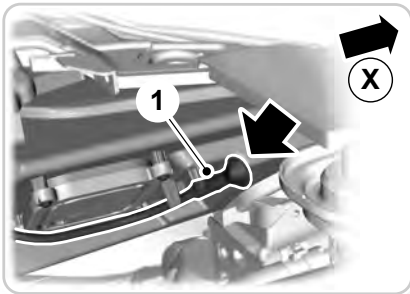
**Note:** To see a clearer light pattern while adjusting one headlamp, block the light from the other headlamp.

8. Close the hood and switch the low beam headlamps off.

### Horizontal Aim Adjustment

Horizontal aim should not be required although it is adjustable.

# Maintenance



E209667

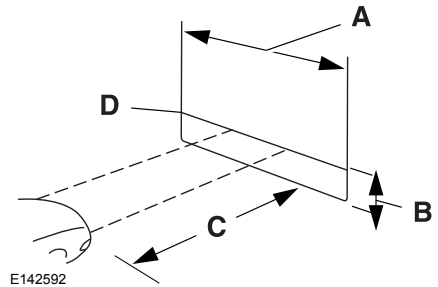
1. Locate the adjuster within the extension tube attached to the rear of the headlamp assembly.
2. To adjust the horizontal aim, use a suitable tool to rotate the adjuster clockwise or counterclockwise.

**Note:** X: Toward the front of the vehicle.

## ADJUSTING THE HEADLAMPS - RHD

### Vertical Aim

#### Headlamp Aim Target



- A 8 ft (2.4 m).
- B Center height of headlamp to the ground.
- C 25 ft (7.6 m).
- D Horizontal reference line.

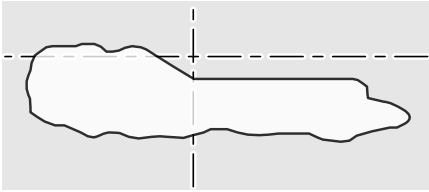
### Vertical Aim Adjustment

1. Park your vehicle on a level surface approximately 7.6 m (25 ft) away from a vertical wall or screen.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Measure the height from the center of the headlamp to the ground.

**Note:** There may be an identifying mark on the lens to help you locate the center of the headlamp bulb.

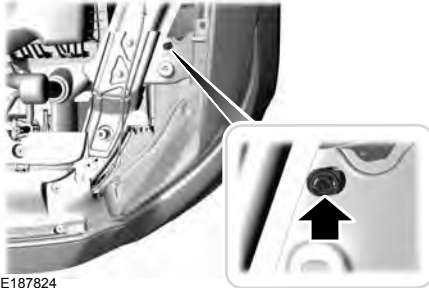
4. Mark a horizontal reference line on the vertical wall or screen that is a minimum of 2.4 m (8 ft) long.
5. Switch the low beam headlamps on and open the hood.

# Maintenance



E209826

6. There is a distinct change from light to dark in the right-hand portion of the headlamp beam pattern. Position the top edge of this cut-off 7.5 cm (3 in) below the horizontal reference line.



E187824

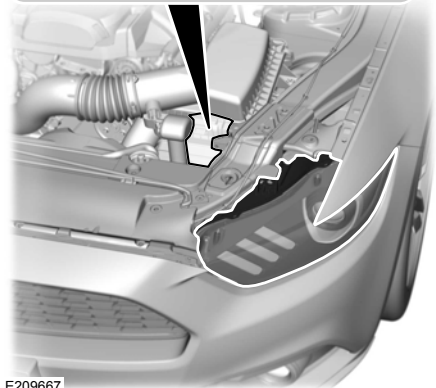
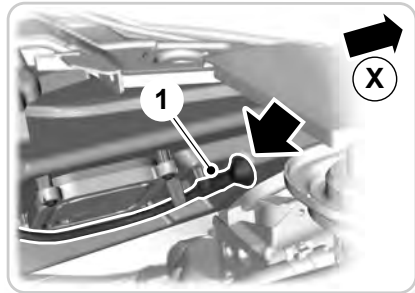
7. To adjust the vertical aim, use a suitable tool to rotate the adjuster clockwise or counterclockwise.

**Note:** To see a clearer light pattern while adjusting one headlamp, block the light from the other headlamp.

8. Close the hood and switch the low beam headlamps off.

## Horizontal Aim Adjustment

Horizontal aim should not be required although it is adjustable.



E209667

1. Locate the adjuster within the extension tube attached to the rear of the headlamp assembly.
2. To adjust the horizontal aim, use a suitable tool to rotate the adjuster clockwise or counterclockwise.

**Note:** X: Toward the front of the vehicle.

## CHANGING A BULB

### WARNINGS



Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to do so could result in serious personal injury.



# Maintenance

## WARNINGS

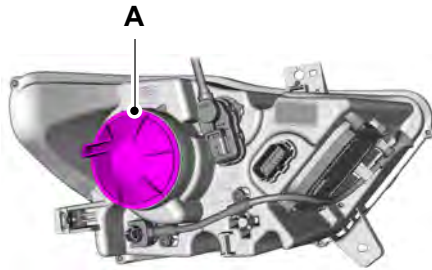


Bulbs become hot when in use. Let them cool down before you remove them.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Bulb Specification Chart** (page 168).

The following instructions describe how to remove the bulbs. Install in the reverse order unless otherwise stated.

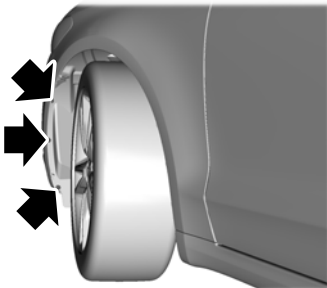
## Headlamp



E199556

A Headlamp high and low beam.

## Front Side Lamp



E159695

1. Remove the three wheel arch liner fasteners.



E176616

2. Remove the outermost engine undershield fastener.
3. Pull the wheel liner back toward the tire to gain access to the bulb.
4. Remove the bulb holder by pulling it straight out.
5. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.

## Headlamp Low and High Beam

Your vehicle has high intensity discharge lamps. These lamps operate at a high voltage. Contact an authorized dealer if they fail.

## Front Direction Indicator



E180889

1. Reposition the wheel arch liner, see **Front Side Lamp**.
2. Disconnect the electrical connector.

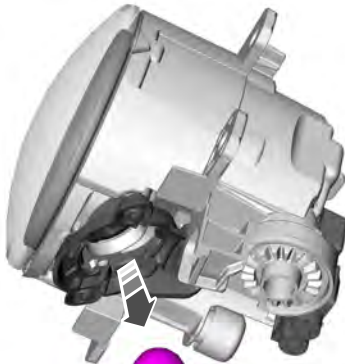
# Maintenance

3. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
4. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.

## Daytime Running Lamp

**Note:** Do not touch the bulb glass.

1. Reposition the wheel arch liner, see **Front Side Lamp**.



3

2

E199705

2. Disconnect the electrical connector.
3. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.

**Note:** You cannot separate the bulb from the bulb holder.

## Front Fog Lamp

**Note:** Do not touch the bulb glass.

1. Reposition the wheel arch liner, see **Front Side Lamp**.



E174588

2. Disconnect the electrical connector.
3. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.

**Note:** You cannot separate the bulb from the bulb holder.

## LED Lamps

LED lamps are not serviceable items. Contact an authorized dealer if they fail.

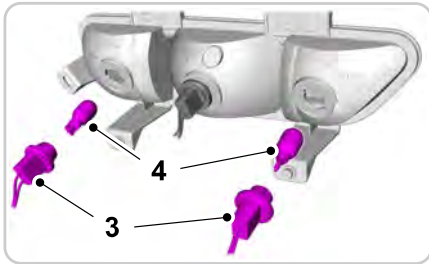
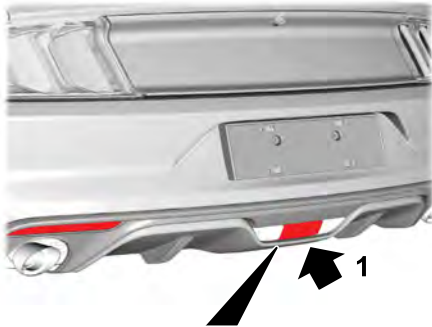
The following are LED lamps:

- Rear lamp.
- Brake lamp.
- Central high mounted brake lamp.
- Rear direction indicator lamp.
- License plate lamp.

## Reversing Lamp

1. Locate the reverse lamp bulb under the rear bumper of your vehicle. To access the bulb, reach behind the bumper.
2. Disconnect the electrical connector.

# Maintenance



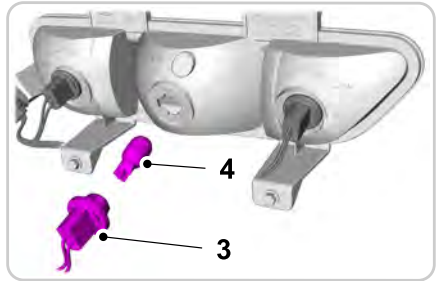
E199707

3. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
4. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.

## Rear Fog Lamp

1. Locate the rear fog lamp bulb under the rear bumper of your vehicle. To access the bulb, reach behind the bumper.

2. Disconnect the electrical connector.



E199706

3. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
4. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.

# Maintenance

## BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

### Exterior Lamps

Lamp	Specification	Power (Watt)
Front side lamp.	W5W	5
Front direction indicator.	PY21W	21
Daytime running lamps.	P13W	30
High-intensity discharge headlamps.	D8S	HID
Front fog lamp.	H8	60
Side direction indicator.	LED	LED
Brake and rear lamp.	LED	LED
Central high mounted brake lamp.	LED	LED
Rear direction indicator.	LED	LED
Rear fog lamp.	W16W	16
Reversing lamps.	W16W	16
License plate lamp.	LED	LED

**Note:** LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

### Interior Lamps

Lamp	Specification	Power (Watt)
Glove compartment lamp.	W5W	5
Interior lamp.	W5W	5
Vanity mirror lamp.	T10	3
Luggage compartment lamp.	W5W	5

# Vehicle Care

---

## CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

**Note:** If you use a car wash with a waxing cycle, make sure that you remove the wax from the windshield and the wiper blades.

**Note:** Prior to using a car wash facility check the suitability of it for your vehicle.

**Note:** Some car washes use water at high pressure. Due to this, water droplets may enter inside your vehicle and could also damage certain parts of your vehicle.

**Note:** Remove the aerial before using an automatic car wash.

**Note:** Switch the heater blower off to prevent contamination of the fresh air filter.

We recommend that you wash your vehicle with a sponge and lukewarm water containing a car shampoo.

### Cleaning the Headlamps

**Note:** Do not scrape the headlamp lenses or use abrasives, alcoholic solvents or chemical solvents to clean them.

**Note:** Do not wipe the headlamps when they are dry.

### Cleaning the Rear Window

**Note:** Do not scrape the inside of the rear window or use abrasives or chemical solvents to clean it.

Use a clean, lint free cloth or a damp chamois leather to clean the inside of the rear window.

### Cleaning the Chrome Trim

**Note:** Do not use abrasives or chemical solvents. Use soapy water.

**Note:** Do not apply cleaning product to hot surfaces and do not leave cleaning product on chrome surfaces for a period of time exceeding that which is recommended.

**Note:** Industrial-strength (heavy-duty) cleaners, or cleaning chemicals, may cause damage over a period of time.

## Body Paintwork Preservation

### WARNINGS



Do not polish your vehicle in strong sunshine.



Do not allow polish to touch plastic surfaces. It could be difficult to remove.



Do not apply polish to the windshield or rear window. This could cause the wipers to become noisy and they may not clear the window properly.

We recommend that you wax the paintwork once or twice a year.

## CLEANING THE INTERIOR

**Note:** Do not allow air fresheners and hand sanitizers to spill on interior surfaces. If a spill occurs, wipe off immediately. Damage may not be covered by your warranty.

### Seatbelts

**Note:** Do not use abrasives, or chemical solvents to clean them.

**Note:** Do not allow moisture to penetrate the seatbelt retractor mechanism.

**Note:** Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. Let them dry naturally, away from artificial heat.

### Instrument Cluster Screens, LCD Screens and Radio Screens

**Note:** Do not use abrasives, alcoholic solvents or chemical solvents to clean the instrument cluster screens, LCD screens or radio screens. These cleaning products can damage the screens.

# Vehicle Care

---

Clean the instrument panel and cluster lens with a clean, damp and soft cloth, then use a clean, dry and soft cloth to dry these areas.

## Rear Windows

**Note:** Do not use any abrasive materials to clean the interior of the rear windows.

**Note:** Do not install stickers or labels to the interior of the rear windows.

## REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

You should repair paintwork damage caused by stones from the road or minor scratches as soon as possible. A choice of products are available from an authorized dealer.

Remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout before repairing paint chips.

Always read and follow the manufacturer's instructions before using the products.

## CLEANING THE ALLOY WHEELS

**Note:** Do not apply a cleaning chemical to warm or hot wheel rims and covers.

**Note:** Industrial-strength (heavy-duty) cleaners, or cleaning chemicals, in combination with brush agitation to remove brake dust and dirt, could wear away the clear coat finish over a period of time.

**Note:** Do not use hydrofluoric acid-based or high caustic-based wheel cleaners, steel wool, fuels or strong household detergent.

**Note:** If you intend parking your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with a wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before doing so. This will reduce the risk of increased corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.

**Note:** Some automatic car washes may cause damage to the finish on your wheel rims and covers.

Alloy wheels and wheel covers are coated with a clear coat paint finish. To maintain their condition we recommend that you:

- Clean them weekly with the recommended wheel and tire cleaner.
- Use a sponge to remove heavy deposits of dirt and brake dust accumulation.
- Rinse them thoroughly with a pressurized stream of water when you have completed the cleaning process.

We recommend that you use Ford service wheel cleaner. Make sure that you read and follow the manufacturer's instructions.

Using other non-recommended cleaning products can result in severe and permanent cosmetic damage.

# Wheels and Tires

## GENERAL INFORMATION

A decal with tire pressure data is located in the driver's door opening.

Check and set the tire pressure at the ambient temperature in which you are intending to drive your vehicle and when the tires are cold.

**Note:** Check your tire pressures regularly to optimize fuel economy.

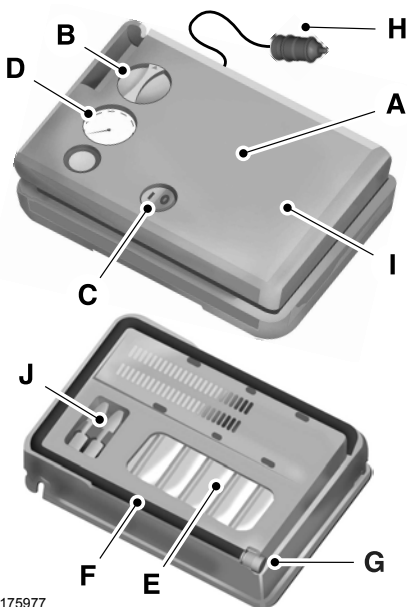
**Note:** Use only approved wheel and tire sizes. Using other sizes could damage your vehicle and will make the National Type Approval invalid.

**Note:** If you change the diameter of the tires from that fitted at the factory, the speedometer may not display the correct speed. Take your vehicle to an authorized dealer to have the engine management system reprogrammed.

## TEMPORARY MOBILITY KIT

**Note:** The temporary mobility kit contains enough sealant compound in the canister for one tire repair only. See an authorized Ford dealer for replacement sealant canisters.

The kit is located under the load floor in the trunk. The kit consists of an air compressor to re-inflate the tire and a canister of sealing compound that will effectively seal most punctures caused by nails or similar objects. This kit provides a temporary tire repair, allowing you to drive your vehicle up to 200 km (120 mi) at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph) to reach a tire service location.



- A Air compressor (inside).
- B Selector switch.
- C On and off button.
- D Air pressure gauge.
- E Sealant bottle and canister.
- F Dual purpose hose: air and repair.
- G Tire valve connector.
- H Accessory power plug.
- I Casing/housing.
- J Bike/raft/sports ball adapters.

# Wheels and Tires

## General Information

### WARNING



Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.

**Note:** Do not use the kit if you have severely damaged a tire. Only seal punctures located within the tire tread with the kit.

Do not attempt to repair punctures larger than ¼ inch (6 millimeters) or damage to the tire's sidewall. The tire may not completely seal.

Loss of air pressure may adversely affect tire performance. For this reason:

**Note:** Do not drive the vehicle above 80 km/h (50 mph).

**Note:** Do not drive further than 200 km (120 mi). Drive only to the closest authorized Ford dealer or tire repair shop to have your tire inspected.

- Drive carefully and avoid abrupt steering maneuvers.
- Periodically monitor tire inflation pressure in the affected tire; if the tire is losing pressure, have the vehicle towed.
- Read the information in the Tips for Use of the Kit section to make sure safe operation of the kit and your vehicle.

## Tips for Use of the Kit

To ensure safe operation of the kit:

- Read all instructions and cautions fully.
- Before operating the kit, make sure your vehicle is safely off the road and away from moving traffic. Switch on the hazard lights.
- Always set the parking brake to ensure the vehicle does not move unexpectedly.

- Do not remove any foreign objects, such as nails or screws, from the tire.
- When using the kit, leave the engine running (only if the vehicle is outdoors or in a well-ventilated area) so the compressor does not drain the vehicle's battery.
- Do not allow the compressor to operate continuously for more than 15 minutes. This will help prevent the compressor from overheating.
- Never leave the kit unattended during operation.
- Sealant compound contains latex. Those with latex sensitivities should use appropriate precautions to avoid an allergic reaction.
- Keep the kit away from children.
- Only use the kit when the ambient temperature is between -30°C (-22°F) and 70°C (158°F).
- Only use the sealing compound before the use-by date. The use-by date is on a label on the sealant canister, which you can see through the rectangular viewing window on the bottom of the compressor. Check the use-by date regularly and replace the canister after four years of non-use.
- Do not store the kit unsecured inside the passenger compartment of the vehicle as it may cause injury during a sudden stop or crash. Always store the kit in its original location.
- After sealant use, an authorized Ford dealer must replace the tire pressure monitoring system sensor and valve stem on the wheel.
- Operating the kit could cause an electrical disturbance in radio, CD and DVD player operation.



# Wheels and Tires



\* When inflation only is required for a tire or other objects, the selector must be in the Air position.




## What to do When a Tire Is Punctured

You can repair a tire puncture within the tire's tread area in two stages with the kit.

- In the first stage, inflate the tire with a sealing compound and air. After you inflate the tire, you will need to drive the vehicle a short distance (about 4 miles [6 kilometers]) to distribute the sealant in the tire.
- In the second stage, check the tire pressure and adjust, if necessary, to the vehicle's specified tire inflation pressure.

## First Stage: Inflating the Tire with Sealing Compound and Air

### WARNINGS

-  Do not stand directly over the kit while inflating the tire. If you notice any unusual bulges or deformations in the tire's sidewall during inflation, stop and call roadside assistance.
-  If the tire does not inflate to the recommended tire pressure within 15 minutes, stop and call roadside assistance.
-  Do not run the engine during kit operation unless the vehicle is outdoors or in a well-ventilated area.

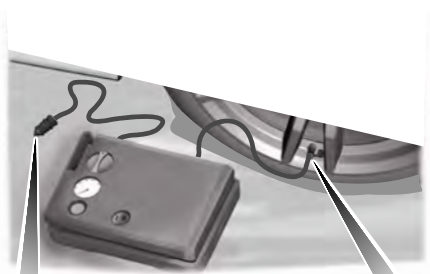
Preparation: Park the vehicle in a safe, level and secure area, away from moving traffic.

Switch the hazard lights on. Apply the parking brake and switch the engine off. Inspect the flat tire for visible damage.

Sealant compound contains latex. Use appropriate precautions to avoid any allergic reactions.

Do not remove any foreign object that has pierced the tire. If a puncture is located in the tire sidewall, stop and call roadside assistance.

1. Remove the valve cap from the tire valve.
2. Unwrap the dual purpose hose (black tube) from the back of the compressor housing.
3. Fasten the hose to the tire valve by turning the connector clockwise. Tighten the connection securely.



E2000523

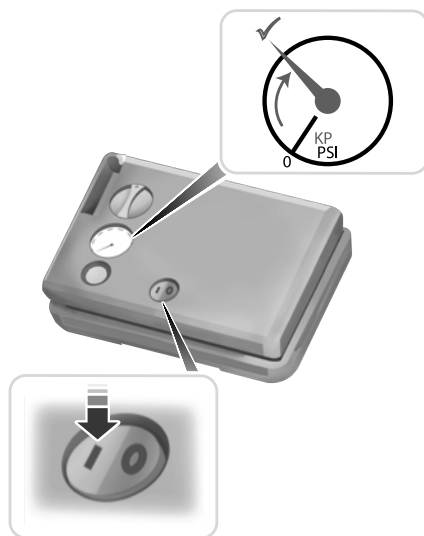
4. Plug the power cable into the 12-volt power point in the vehicle.
5. Remove the warning sticker found on the casing/housing and place it on the top of the instrument panel or the center of the dash.
6. Start the vehicle and leave the engine running so the compressor does not drain the vehicle's battery.

## Wheels and Tires



E175981

7. Turn dial (A) clockwise to the sealant position. Switch the kit on by pressing the on/off button (B).
8. Inflate the tire to the pressure listed on the tire label located on the driver's door or the door jamb area. The initial air pressure gauge reading may indicate a value higher than the label pressure while you pump the sealing compound into the tire. This is normal and should be no reason for concern. The pressure gauge reading will indicate the tire inflation pressure after about 30 seconds of operation. You should check the final tire pressure with the compressor turned OFF in order to get an accurate pressure reading.



E175982

9. When the tire reaches the recommended tire pressure, switch off the kit, unplug the power cable, and disconnect the hose from the tire valve. Re-install the valve cap on the tire valve and return the kit to the stowage area.
10. Immediately and cautiously, drive the vehicle 4 miles (6 kilometers) to distribute the sealant evenly inside the tire. Do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).
11. After 4 miles (6 kilometers), stop and check the tire pressure. See Second Stage: Checking Tire Pressure.

# Wheels and Tires

**Note:** *If you experience any unusual vibration, ride disturbance or noise while driving, reduce your speed until you can safely pull off to the side of the road to call for roadside assistance. Note: Do not proceed to the second stage of this operation.*

## Second Stage: Checking Tire Pressure

### WARNINGS



If you are proceeding from the First Stage: Re-inflating the Tire with Sealing Compound and Air section and have injected sealant in the tire and the pressure is below 1.4 bar (20 psi), continue to the next step.



The power plug may get hot after use and should be handled carefully while unplugging.

Check the air pressure of your tires as follows:



E175983

1. Remove the valve cap from the tire valve.
2. Firmly screw the air compressor hose onto the valve stem by turning clockwise.
3. Push and turn the dial clockwise to the air position.

4. If required, switch on the compressor and adjust the tire to the recommended inflation pressure shown on the tire label located on the driver's door or door jamb area. You should check the tire pressure with the compressor turned OFF in order to get an accurate pressure reading.
5. Unplug the hoses, re-install the valve cap on the tire and return the kit to the stowage area.

## What to Do After the Tire has Been Sealed

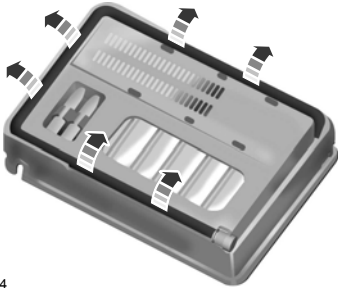
After using the kit to seal your tire, you will need to replace the sealant canister. You can obtain sealant canisters and spare parts at an authorized Ford dealer. You can dispose of empty sealant canisters at home. However, you should dispose of canisters still containing liquid sealant through your local authorized Ford dealer or tire dealer, or in accordance with local waste disposal regulation.

**Note:** *After you use the sealing compound, the maximum vehicle speed is 80 km/h (50 mph) and the maximum driving distance is 200 km (120 mi). You should inspect the sealed tire immediately.*

You can check the tire pressure any time within the 200 km (120 mi) by performing the steps listed previously in the Second Stage: Checking Tire Pressure procedure.

# Wheels and Tires

## Removal of the sealant canister from the kit



E175984

1. Unwrap the dual purpose hose (black tube) from the compressor housing.



E175985

2. Unwrap the power cord.



E175986

3. Remove the back cover.



E175987

4. Rotate the sealant canister up 90 degrees and pull away from casing/housing to remove.

## Installation of the sealant canister to the kit

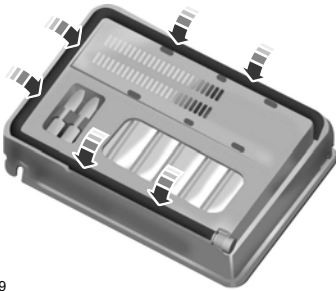
1. With the canister held perpendicular to the housing, insert the canister nozzle into the connector and push until seated.
2. Rotate the canister 90 degrees down into the housing/casing.



E175988

3. Snap the back cover back into place.

# Wheels and Tires



E175989

4. Wrap the dual purpose hose (black tube) around the channel on the bottom of the housing/casing.



E175990

5. Wrap the power cord around the housing and stow the accessory power plug into its storage area.

**Note:** If you experience any difficulties with the removal or installation of the sealant canister, consult an authorized Ford dealer for assistance.

Make sure you check the sealant compound's use-by date regularly. The use-by date is on a label located on the sealant canister, which you can see through the rectangular viewing window on the bottom of the kit. You should replace the sealant canister after four years of non-use.

## TIRE CARE

**Note:** If your tires show uneven wear ask an authorized dealer to check for and correct any wheel misalignment, tire imbalance or mechanical problem involved before tire rotation.

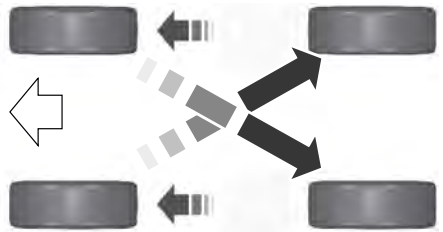
**Note:** Your vehicle may be equipped with a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly. A dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly is defined as a spare wheel and tire assembly that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels. If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.

**Note:** After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.

Rotating your tires at the recommended interval (as indicated in the Scheduled Maintenance chapter) will help your tires wear more evenly, providing better tire performance and longer tire life.

Rear-wheel drive vehicles (front tires at left of diagram).

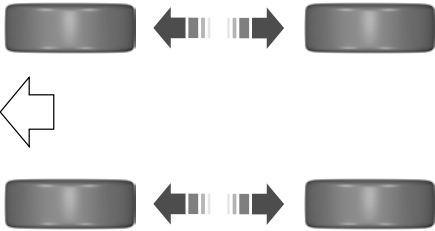
### Non-directional tires



E142548

### Directional tires

# Wheels and Tires



E70415

Sometimes irregular tire wear can be corrected by rotating the tires.

## USING SUMMER TIRES

Summer tires provide superior performance on wet and dry roads. Summer tires do not have the Mud and Snow (M+S or M/S) tire traction rating on the tire side wall. Since summer tires do not have the same traction performance as All-season or Snow tires, we do not recommend using summer tires when temperatures drop to about 7°C (45°F) or below (depending on tire wear and environmental conditions) or in snow and ice conditions. Like any tire, summer tire performance is affected by tire wear and environmental conditions. If you must drive in those conditions, we recommend using Mud and Snow (M+S, M/S), All-season or Snow tires.

Always store your summer tires indoors at temperatures above -7°C (19°F). The rubber compounds used in these tires lose flexibility and may develop surface cracks in the tread area at temperatures below -7°C (19°F). If the tires have been subjected to -7°C (19°F) or less, warm them in a heated space to at least 5°C (41°F) for at least 24 hours before installing them on a vehicle, or moving the vehicle with the tires installed, or checking


tire inflation. Do not place tires near heaters or heating devices used to warm the room where the tires are stored. Do not apply heat or blow heated air directly on the tires. Always inspect the tires after storage periods and before use.


## USING WINTER TIRES

If winter tires are used you must inflate them to the same tire pressures as those listed in the tire pressure table. See **Technical Specifications** (page 189).

## USING SNOW CHAINS

### WARNINGS

 Driving too fast for conditions creates the possibility of loss of vehicle control. Driving at very high speeds for extended periods of time may result in damage to vehicle components.

 Snow tires must be the same size, load index, speed rating as those originally provided by Ford. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. Additionally, the use of non-recommended tires and wheels could cause steering, suspension, axle, transfer case or power transfer unit failure.

The tires on your vehicle may have all-weather treads to provide traction in rain and snow. However, in some climates, you may need to use snow tires and chains. Use chains on the tires only in an emergency or if the law requires them.

**Note:** *The suspension insulation and bumpers will help prevent vehicle damage. Do not remove these components from your vehicle when using snow tires and chains.*

# Wheels and Tires

Follow these guidelines when using snow tires and chains:

- If possible, avoid fully loading your vehicle
- Chains may damage aluminum wheels.
- Use ultra low profile cables, 10 mm or less in dimension as measured on the sidewall of your tire, with 255/40R19 on the rear axle only.
- Do not use snow chains or cables with 275/40R19 tires.
- Not all S-class snow chains or cables meet these restrictions. Chains of this size restriction will include a tensioning device.
- Purchase chains or cables from a manufacturer that clearly labels body to tire dimension restrictions. The snow chains or cables must be mounted in pairs on the front or the rear tires only.
- Do not exceed 30 mph (50 km/h) if recommended by the chain manufacturer while using snow chains.
- Install cables securely, verifying that the cables do not touch any wiring, brake lines or fuel lines.
- Drive cautiously. If you hear the cables rub or bang against the vehicle, stop and retighten them. If this does not work, remove the cables to prevent vehicle damage.
- Remove the tire chains when they are no longer needed. Do not use tire chains on dry roads.

If you have any questions regarding snow chains or cables, please contact your authorized dealer.

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM

### WARNING



The tire pressure monitoring system is not a substitute for manually checking tire pressures. You should periodically check tire pressures using a pressure gauge. Failure to correctly maintain tire pressures could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.



You must check the tire pressures (including the spare tire where applicable) every two weeks when the tires are cold.

You must inflate the tires to the correct pressure.

See **Wheels and Tires** (page 171). The tire pressures are also on the tire inflation pressure label (located on the edge of driver door or the B-Pillar).

As a driver assistance feature, your vehicle has a tire pressure monitoring system. A warning lamp will illuminate when one or more of the tires are significantly under-inflated. If the low tire pressure warning lamp illuminates, you should stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, check the tires and inflate them to the correct pressure.

Driving on under-inflated tires can:

- Cause them to overheat.
- Lead to tire failure.
- Reduce fuel efficiency.
- Reduce tire life.
- Affect vehicle handling or stopping ability.

The system is not a substitute for correct tire maintenance.

# Wheels and Tires

You must maintain the correct tire pressures, even if low tire pressure has not illuminated the warning lamp.

## To check the tire pressures through the information display, scroll to:

Message	Action and Description
Driver assist	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Tyre pressure monitor	Press the <b>OK</b> button. The tyre pressure graphic displays.

The tire pressure monitoring system has a system malfunction indicator to warn you when the system is not operating correctly. The malfunction indicator and low tire pressure warning lamp have a combined function. When the system detects a malfunction, the warning lamp will flash for approximately one minute and then remain illuminated. This sequence will occur every time you switch the ignition on while the malfunction remains. The system has detected a fault that requires service.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressures. A malfunction may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of a replacement tire or wheel that prevents the system from functioning correctly. Always check the tire pressure monitoring system malfunction warning after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle. Make sure the replacement tires or wheels allow the system to continue to function correctly. See **When the Temporary Spare Tire is Installed** in this section.

## How Temperature Affects the Tire Pressures

Under normal driving conditions tire pressures may increase by up to 0.3 bar (4 psi) from a cold start situation.

If the vehicle is stationary overnight and the temperature significantly lower than the daytime temperature, tire pressures may decrease by up to 0.2 bar (3 psi) when there is a drop in the ambient temperature of 31°F (17°C) or more. The system detects this pressure decrease as being significantly below the correct inflation pressure and the warning lamp illuminates.

## Changing Tires With a Tire Pressure Monitoring System



E142549

You should always have tires serviced by an authorized dealer.

**Note:** Each road wheel and tire is fitted with a tire pressure sensor located inside the wheel and tire assembly cavity. The pressure sensor attaches to the valve stem. The tire covers the pressure sensor and it is not visible unless the tire is removed. Take care when changing the tire to avoid damaging the sensor.



# Wheels and Tires

---

## **Understanding the Tire Pressure Monitoring System**

The system measures the pressure in the four road tires and sends the tire pressure readings to your vehicle.

The system detects this lower pressure as being significantly below the correct inflation pressure and the warning lamp illuminates. You must inflate the tires to the correct pressure.

## **When the Temporary Spare Tire is Installed**

If you need to replace a road wheel and tire with the temporary spare wheel, the system will continue to identify a defect. This is to remind you to repair the damaged road wheel and tire and refit the repaired road wheel and tire assembly to your vehicle. To restore the correct operation of the system, you must have the repaired road wheel and tire assembly refitted to your vehicle.

## **When You Believe the System is Not Operating Correctly**

The main function of the system is to warn you when the tire pressures are low. It can also warn you in the event the system is no longer capable of operating correctly. See the following chart for information concerning the system:

## **When Inflating the Tires**

When inflating the tires the system may not respond immediately to the air added to the tires.

# Wheels and Tires

## System Warning Lamps

Warning lamp	Description	Action
Solid warning lamp	Tire(s) under-inflated	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Make sure tires are at the correct pressure. See <b>Wheels and Tires</b> (page 171). The tire pressures are also on the tire inflation pressure label (located on the edge of driver door or the B-Pillar).</li> <li>2. After inflating the tires to the correct pressure you must carry out the tire pressure monitoring system reset procedure. See <b>Tire Pressure Monitoring System Reset Procedure</b> in this chapter.</li> </ol>
	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire and refit the repaired road wheel and tire assembly to your vehicle to restore the correct operation of the system.
	Tire pressure monitoring system malfunction	If the tires are correctly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, the system has detected a fault that requires service.
Solid warning lamp initially followed by a flashing warning lamp	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire and refit the repaired road wheel and tire assembly to your vehicle to restore the correct operation of the system.
	Tire pressure monitoring system malfunction	If the tires are correctly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, the system has detected a fault that requires service.

### If the Warning Lamp is On:

1. Check each tire to verify that none are flat.
2. If one or more tires are flat, repair as necessary.
3. Check the tire pressures and inflate all the tires to the correct pressure.
4. Carry out the tire pressure monitoring system reset procedure.

## Tire Pressure Monitoring System Reset Procedure

### Overview

To maintain your vehicle load carrying capability, your vehicle requires different tire pressures in the front tires compared to the rear tires.

# Wheels and Tires

The system illuminates the warning lamp at different pressures for the front and rear tires.

The tires need to be periodically rotated to provide consistent performance and maximum tire life, the system needs to know when the tires have been rotated to determine which set of tires are on the front and rear axles. With this information, the system can detect and correctly warn of low tire pressures.

## Carrying Out the System Reset Procedure

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Using the information display control, navigate to tire pressure reset. See **Information Displays** (page 67).
3. Press and hold the OK button until confirmation appears.

### To reset the tire pressure monitoring system, scroll to:

Message	Description and Action
Settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Driver assist	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Tyre monitor	Press and hold the <b>OK</b> button until confirmation appears. Alternatively, if your vehicle has a tire pressure monitoring system reset button, press and hold the button until confirmation appears.

## CHANGING A ROAD WHEEL

### WARNINGS



The use of tire sealant may damage your tire pressure monitoring system and should only be used in roadside emergencies. If you must use a sealant, the Ford Tire Mobility Kit sealant should be used. The tire pressure monitoring system sensor and valve stem on the wheel must be replaced by an authorized dealer after use of the sealant.



See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 179). If the tire pressure monitor sensor becomes damaged, it will no longer function.

**Note:** *The tire pressure monitoring system indicator light will illuminate when the spare tire is in use. To restore the full function of the monitoring system, all road wheels equipped with tire pressure monitoring sensors must be mounted on the vehicle.*

If you get a flat tire while driving, do not apply the brake heavily. Instead, gradually decrease your speed. Hold the steering wheel firmly and slowly move to a safe place on the side of the road.

Have a flat serviced by an authorized dealer in order to prevent damage to the tire pressure monitoring system sensors. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 179). Replace the spare tire with a road tire as soon as possible. During repairing or replacing of the flat tire, have the authorized dealer inspect the tire pressure monitoring system sensor for damage.

# Wheels and Tires

## Dissimilar Spare Wheel and Tire Assembly Information

### WARNING



Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.

If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire, then it is intended for temporary use only. This means that if you need to use it, you should replace it as soon as possible with a road wheel and tire assembly that is the same size and type as the road tires and wheels that were originally provided by Ford. If the dissimilar spare tire or wheel is damaged, it should be replaced rather than repaired.

A dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly is defined as a spare wheel and tire assembly that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels and can be one of three types:

1. **T-type mini-spare:** This spare tire begins with the letter T for tire size and may have Temporary Use Only molded in the sidewall.

2. **Full-size dissimilar spare with label on wheel:** This spare tire has a label on the wheel that states: THIS WHEEL AND TIRE ASSEMBLY FOR TEMPORARY USE ONLY.

When driving with one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above, do not:

- Exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Load the vehicle beyond maximum vehicle load rating listed on the Safety Compliance Label.
- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare tire.
- Use more than one dissimilar spare tire at a time.

- Use commercial car washing equipment.
- Try to repair the dissimilar spare tire.

Use of one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above at any one wheel location can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance.
- Comfort and noise.
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs.
- Winter weather driving capability.
- Wet weather driving capability.
- All-wheel driving capability.

### 3. Full-size dissimilar spare without label on wheel

When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly, do not:

- Exceed 113 km/h (70 mph).
- Use more than one dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly at a time.
- Use commercial car washing equipment.
- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly.

The usage of a full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance.
- Comfort and noise.
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs.
- Winter weather driving capability.
- Wet weather driving capability.
- All-wheel driving capability.

When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly additional caution should be given to:

- Driving vehicles with a load on the cargo rack.

# Wheels and Tires

Drive cautiously when using a full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly and seek service as soon as possible.

## Tire Change Procedure

### WARNINGS

⚠ When one of the front wheels is off the ground, the transmission alone will not prevent your vehicle from moving or slipping off the jack, even if the transmission is in park (P) or reverse (R) for manual transmissions.

⚠ To help prevent your vehicle from moving when you change a tire, be sure to place the transmission in park (P) or reverse (R) for manual transmissions, set the parking brake and block (in both directions) the wheel that is diagonally opposite (other side and end of the vehicle) to the tire being changed.

⚠ Never get underneath a vehicle that is supported only by a jack. If your vehicle slips off the jack, you or someone else could be seriously injured.

⚠ Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.

⚠ Always use the jack provided as original equipment with your vehicle. If using a jack other than the one provided as original equipment with your vehicle, make sure the jack capacity is adequate for the vehicle weight, including any vehicle cargo or modifications.

### WARNINGS

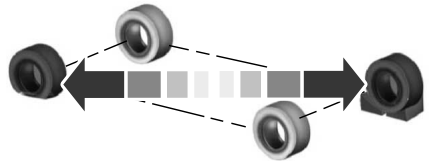


Check that the vehicle jack is not damaged or deformed and the thread is lubricated and clean.



Passengers should not remain in your vehicle when the vehicle is being jacked.

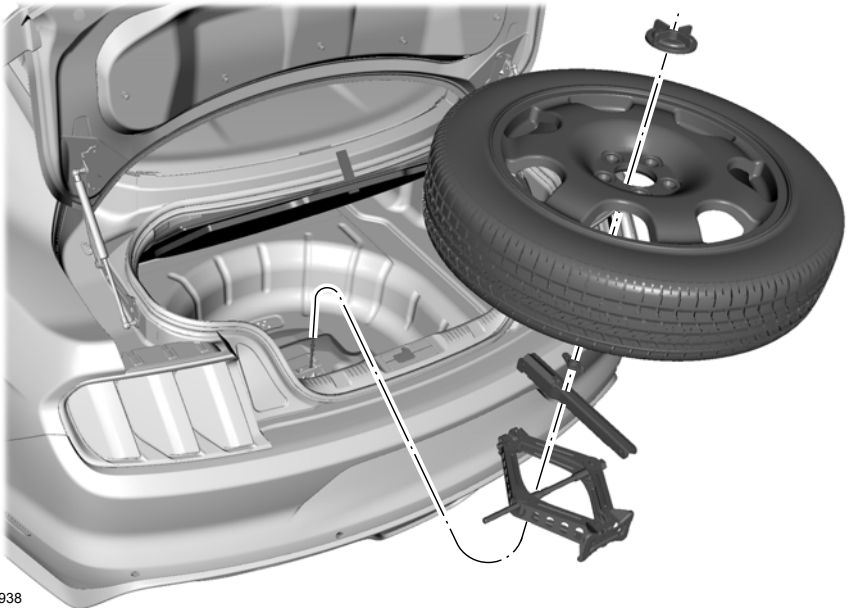
1. Park on a surface, set the parking brake and activate the hazard flashers.
2. Place the transmission in park (P) and turn the engine off. For vehicles with a manual transmission, place the transmission in reverse (R) after the engine is turned off.



E175447

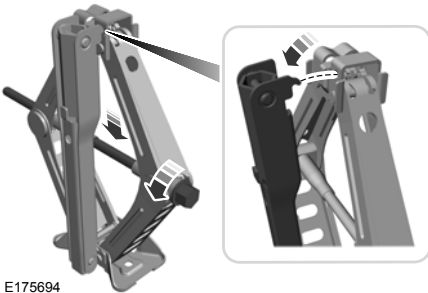
3. Block both the front and rear of the wheel diagonally opposite the flat tire. For example, if the left front tire is flat, block the right rear wheel.

# Wheels and Tires



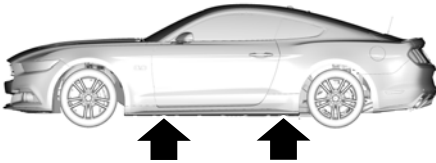
E174938

4. Remove the lug wrench, spare tire and jack.
5. Remove the center ornament from the wheel if required to access the lug nuts.
6. To remove the wrench from the jack, turn the hex nut on the jack counterclockwise. This will lower the jack and loosen the mechanical lock.
7. Loosen each wheel lug nut one-half turn counterclockwise but do not remove them until the wheel is raised off the ground.



E175694

# Wheels and Tires



E176084

**Note:** Jack at the specified locations to avoid damage to the vehicle.

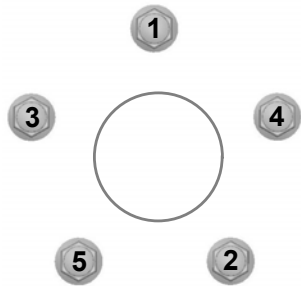
8. The vehicle jacking points are shown here, and can be identified by the triangle markings on the vehicle. Details are depicted on the warning label on the jack.



E174939

9. Place the jack at the jacking point next to the tire you are changing. Turn the jack handle clockwise until the wheel is completely off the ground.
10. Remove the lug nuts with the lug wrench.

11. Replace the flat tire with the spare tire, making sure the valve stem is facing outward. Reinstall lug nuts until the wheel is snug against the hub. Do not fully tighten the lug nuts until the wheel has been lowered. If you are using the temporary tire, the lug nut washers will not appear to be flush with the rim. This is normal only when using the temporary spare tire.
12. Lower the wheel by turning the jack handle counterclockwise.



E75442

13. Remove the jack and fully tighten the lug nuts in the order shown. See **Technical Specifications** (page 189).
14. To store the folded wrench on the jack, engage the bracket of the jack base on the wrench feature as shown. Swing the wrench upwards and adjust the height of the jack until the pin engages the hole. Tighten the hex nut clockwise by hand until secure.

# Wheels and Tires



E176165

15. Put the flat tire, wheel ornament, jack and lug wrench away. Make sure the jack is fastened so it does not rattle when you drive.
16. Unblock the wheel.

## DRIVING AT HIGH SPEED

### Tire pressure - Speeds greater than 100 mph (160 km/h)

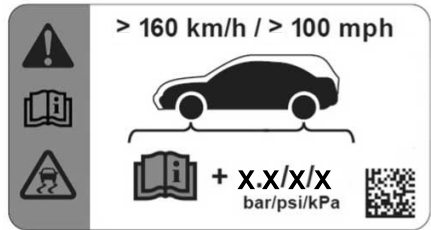
#### WARNING



To reduce the risk of potential tire failure that could lead to serious injury or death, increase the front and rear tire placard pressures by the amount shown on the warning label, located on either the driver side B-pillar or door, when driving over 160 km/h (100 mph). Only travel at speeds over 160 km/h (100 mph) where it is legal and conditions allow. The tire placard pressure can be found on the tire placard located on either the driver side B-pillar or door of your vehicle.



**Warning:** Failure to follow these instructions can result in a loss of vehicle stability due to tire failure that could lead to serious injury or death. If you are not sure about the proper tire inflation pressures, contact an authorized dealer or service center.



E184089

Your tires may require additional inflation pressure for operation at speeds greater than 160 km/h (100 mph). If this label is present on your vehicle, you must adjust the tire pressure accordingly.



# Wheels and Tires

## TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

### Wheel Nut Torque

Wheel type	lb-ft (Nm)
All	204 Nm (150 lb.ft)

### Tire Pressures (Cold Tires)

#### Spare Tire

Variant	Tire size	Normal load		Full load	
		Front	Rear	Front	Rear
		kPa	kPa	kPa	kPa
Temporary spare wheel when it differs from the other fitted wheels	155/60R18	420 kPa (60 psi)	420 kPa (60 psi)	420 kPa (60 psi)	420 kPa (60 psi)

#### Up to 100 mph (160 km/h)

Variant	Tire size	Normal load		Full load	
		Front	Rear	Front	Rear
		kPa	kPa	kPa	kPa
2.3L EcoBoost	255/40ZR19*	220 kPa (32 psi)	220 kPa (32 psi)	220 kPa (32 psi)	220 kPa (32 psi)
5.0L	255/40ZR19	220 kPa (32 psi)	-	220 kPa (32 psi)	-
	275/40ZR19	-	220 kPa (32 psi)	-	220 kPa (32 psi)

\*Only fit snow chains to specified tires.

# Wheels and Tires

## Continuous Speed in Excess of 100 mph (160 km/h)

Variant	Tire size	Normal load		Full load	
		Front	Rear	Front	Rear
		kPa	kPa	kPa	kPa
2.3L EcoBoost	255/40ZR19	220 kPa (32 psi)	220 kPa (32 psi)	220 kPa (32 psi)	220 kPa (32 psi)
5.0L	255/40ZR19	220 kPa (32 psi)	-	220 kPa (32 psi)	-
	275/40ZR19	-	220 kPa (32 psi)	-	220 kPa (32 psi)

<b>Technical Specifications</b>	<p>The tire wheel assembly has already been balanced at the vehicle assembly plant. There are many factors during the vehicle usage that may lead to a tire wheel imbalance. These factors may cause vehicle vibration and increased steering, suspension and tire wear. In this case, the wheel and tire assembly may need to be re-balanced. The maximum <b>dynamic static</b> imbalance per wheel balance plane needs to be less than 7g. The tire wheel assembly also needs to be re-balanced after changing the wheel and the tire. Please contact an authorized dealer for service.</p>
---------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

# Capacities and Specifications

---

## VEHICLE DIMENSIONS - COUPE

<b>Dimension Description</b>	<b>mm (in)</b>
Maximum length.	4,784 mm (188.3 in)
Overall width including exterior mirrors.	2,080 mm (81.9 in)
Overall height - EC curb weight.	1,381 mm (54.4 in)
Wheelbase.	2,720 mm (107.1 in)
Front track.	1,582 mm (62.3 in)
Rear track.	1,655 mm (65.2 in)

# Capacities and Specifications

---

## VEHICLE DIMENSIONS - CONVERTIBLE

<b>Dimension Description</b>	<b>mm (in)</b>
Maximum length.	4,784 mm (188.3 in)
Overall width including exterior mirrors.	2,080 mm (81.9 in)
Overall height - EC curb weight.	1,394 mm (54.9 in)
Wheelbase.	2,720 mm (107.1 in)
Front track.	1,582 mm (62.3 in)
Rear track.	1,655 mm (65.2 in)

# Capacities and Specifications

## VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE

<b>FoMoCo</b>		<b>FORD</b>	
G1	G2	A	
G3	G4	B	
G5	G6	C kg	
G7		D kg	
G8	G9	1. -	E kg
G10		2. -	F kg

E218575 5U5A-3520472-AA

- A Type Approval Number
- B Vehicle Identification Number
- C Maximum Permissible Laden Weight of the Vehicle (GVWR)
- D Maximum Permissible Weight of Combination (GCWR)
- E Maximum Permissible Front Axle Weight (Front GAWR)
- F Maximum Permissible Rear Axle Weight (Rear GAWR)
- G1 Drive Side
- G2 Engine Code
- G3 Transmission Code
- G4 Axle Code
- G5 Exterior Trim
- G6 Exterior Paint
- G7 Emission
- G8 Version
- G9 Variant
- G10 Type Homologation

The vehicle identification plate is within the passenger side door opening.

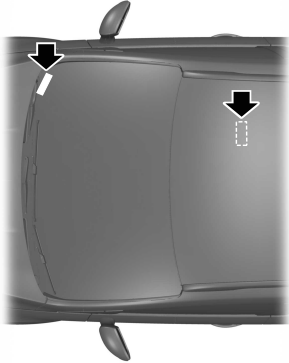
**Note:** The vehicle identification plate may vary to that shown.

**Note:** Information on the vehicle identification plate is dependent upon market requirements.

# Capacities and Specifications

## VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

You can find the vehicle identification number at the following locations.



E213408

The vehicle identification Number is stamped into the floor panel on the right-hand side, under the front seat. It is also shown on the right-hand side of the instrument panel and on the vehicle identification plate.

## CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 2.3L ECOBOOST™

### WARNING



The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

## Capacities

Item	Capacity
Engine oil fill capacity including the oil filter.	5.4 L (1.2 gal)
Engine oil fill capacity excluding the oil filter.	5.2 L (1.1 gal)
Engine coolant fill capacity.	9 L (2.0 gal)
Automatic transmission fluid fill capacity.	11 L (2.4 gal)
Manual transmission fluid fill capacity.	2.6 L (0.6 gal)
Rear axle fluid	1.5 L (1.6 qt)
Rear axle friction modifier	97 ml (3.28 fl oz)
Fuel tank fill capacity.	58.8 L (12.9 gal)
Windshield and headlamp washer system fill capacity.	2.5 L (0.5 gal)

# Capacities and Specifications

## Adding Engine Oil

<b>Quantity</b>
0.8 L (0.2 gal)

The quantity of engine oil required to raise the indicated level on the dipstick from minimum to maximum.

## Specifications

### Materials

<b>Name</b>	<b>Specification</b>
Engine Oil - 5W-30	WSS-M2C913-D
Antifreeze Super Plus Premium Ready Mix 2U2J-19544-xxxx	WSS-M97B44-D2
Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance BU7J-M6C65-xxxx	WSS-M6C65-A2
Automatic Transmission Oil C-ML5 7U7J-M2C938-AB	MERCON® LV WSS-M2C938-A
Transmission Oil - 75W FE 7U7J-M2C200-BA/CA	WSS-M2C200-D2
Rear Axle Oil SAE 75W-85 EU7J-M2C942-AA	WSS-M2C942-A
Friction Modifier	EST-M2C118-A
Screen Wash 2U7J-M8B16-AA/CA/DA, 3U7J-19523-GA, FU7J-19C544-AA/BA/DA/EA/GA/HA	WSS-M14P19-A

Only use fluid that meets Ford specifications.

If you are unable to find an engine oil that meets the specification defined by WSS-M2C913-D, it is acceptable to use a SAE 5W-30 engine oil that is defined by ACEA A5/B5.

For complete refill of limited slip Ford axles, add 97 ml (3.28 fl oz) of Additive Friction Modifier XL-3 or equivalent meeting Ford Specification EST-M2C118-A. Ford rear axles contain a synthetic lubricant that does not require changing unless you submerge the axle in water.

**Note:** Do not use more than 1 L (0.2 gal) between scheduled service intervals.

Using oil and fluids that do not meet the defined specification and viscosity grade may lead to:

- Component damage which may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced engine performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.
- Degraded brake performance.



We recommend Castrol and Ford engine oils and lubricants.

# Capacities and Specifications

## CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 5.0L

### WARNING



The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

## Capacities

Item	Capacity
Engine oil fill capacity including the oil filter.	7.6 L (1.7 gal)
Engine oil fill capacity excluding the oil filter.	7.1 L (1.6 gal)
Engine coolant fill capacity.	12.9 L (2.8 gal)
Automatic transmission fluid fill capacity.	11.2 L (2.5 gal)
Manual transmission fluid fill capacity.	2.6 L (0.6 gal)
Rear axle fluid	1.5 L (1.6 qt)
Rear axle friction modifier	97 ml (3.28 fl oz)
Fuel tank fill capacity.	61 L (13.4 gal)
Windshield and headlamp washer system fill capacity.	2.5 L (0.5 gal)

## Adding Engine Oil

Quantity
1 L (0.2 gal)

The quantity of engine oil required to raise the indicated level on the dipstick from minimum to maximum.

## Specifications

### Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - 5W-20	WSS-M2C948-B
Antifreeze Super Plus Premium Ready Mix 2U2J-19544-xxxx	WSS-M97B44-D2



## Capacities and Specifications

Name	Specification
Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance BU7J-M6C65-xxxx	WSS-M6C65-A2
Automatic Transmission Oil C-ML5 7U7J-M2C938-AB	MERCON® LV WSS-M2C938-A
Transmission Oil - 75W FE 7U7J-M2C200-BA/CA	WSS-M2C200-D2
Rear Axle Oil SAE 75W-85 EU7J-M2C942-AA	WSS-M2C942-A
Friction Modifier	EST-M2C118-A
Screen Wash 2U7J-M8B16-AA/CA/DA, 3U7J-19523-GA, FU7J-19C544-AA/BA/DA/EA/GA/HA	WSS-M14P19-A

Only use fluid that meets Ford specifications.

If you are unable to find an engine oil that meets the specification defined by WSS-M2C948-B, it is acceptable to use a SAE 5W-20 engine oil that is defined by ACEA A5/B5.

For complete refill of limited slip Ford axles, add 97 ml (3.28 fl oz) of Additive Friction Modifier XL-3 or equivalent meeting Ford Specification EST-M2C118-A. Ford rear axles contain a synthetic lubricant that does not require changing unless you submerge the axle in water.

**Note:** Do not use more than 1 L (0.2 gal) between scheduled service intervals.

Using oil and fluids that do not meet the defined specification and viscosity grade may lead to:

- Component damage which may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced engine performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.
- Degraded brake performance.



We recommend Castrol and Ford engine oils and lubricants.

# Capacities and Specifications

## FUEL CONSUMPTION FIGURES

Variant	Urban	Extra-Urban	Combined	CO2 Emissions
	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	g/km
2.3L EcoBoost Coupe - vehicles with automatic transmission.	14.3 (16.4)	7.2 (32.7)	9.8 (24.0)	225
2.3L EcoBoost Coupe - vehicles with manual transmission.*	10.1 (23.3)	6.8 (34.6)	8 (29.4)	179
2.3L EcoBoost Convertible - vehicles with automatic transmission.	13.8 (17.0)	7.5 (31.4)	9.8 (24.0)	225
2.3L EcoBoost Convertible - vehicles with manual transmission.*	10.4 (22.6)	6.9 (34.1)	8.2 (28.7)	184
5.0L Coupe - vehicles with automatic transmission.	18.61 (12.6)	8.19 (28.7)	12.02 (19.6)	281
5.0L Coupe - vehicles with manual transmission.	20.06 (11.7)	9.62 (24.5)	13.46 (17.5)	299
5.0L Convertible - vehicles with automatic transmission.	19.9 (11.8)	8.74 (26.9)	12.83 (18.3)	289
5.0L Convertible - vehicles with manual transmission.	20.13 (11.7)	9.81 (24.0)	13.61 (17.3)	306

\*The above figures were achieved using second gear to pull away from a stationary position while on level ground. On vehicles with manual transmission, we recommend you use second gear to pull away from a stationary position while on level ground.

# Audio System

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### Radio Frequencies and Reception Factors

Radio reception factors	
Distance and Strength	The further you travel away from an FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.
Terrain	Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with the reception.
Station overload	When you pass near a radio transmission tower, a stronger signal can override a weaker signal and can cause interference in the audio system.

### CD and CD Player Information

**Note:** *CD units play commercially pressed 4.75-inch (12 centimeter) audio compact discs only. Due to technical incompatibility, certain recordable and re-recordable compact discs may not function correctly when used in Ford CD players.*

**Note:** *Do not insert CDs with homemade paper (adhesive) labels into the CD player as the label may peel and cause the CD to become jammed. You should use a permanent felt tip marker rather than adhesive labels on your homemade CDs. Ballpoint pens may damage CDs. Please contact an authorized dealer for further information.*

**Note:** *Do not use any irregularly shaped discs or discs with a scratch protection film attached.*

Always handle discs by their edges only. Clean the disc with an approved CD cleaner only. Wipe it from the center of the disc toward the edge. Do not clean in a circular motion.

Do not expose discs to direct sunlight or heat sources for extended periods.

### MP3 and WMA Track and Folder Structure

Audio systems capable of recognizing and playing MP3 and WMA individual tracks and folder structures work as follows:

- There are two different modes for MP3 and WMA disc playback: MP3 and WMA track mode (system default) and MP3 and WMA folder mode.
- MP3 and WMA track mode ignores any folder structure on the MP3 and WMA disc. The player numbers each MP3 and WMA track on the disc (noted by the MP3 or WMA file extension) from T001 to a maximum of T255. The maximum number of playable MP3 and WMA files may be less depending on the structure of the CD and exact model of radio present.

# Audio System

---

- MP3 and WMA folder mode represents a folder structure consisting of one level of folders. The CD player numbers all MP3 and WMA tracks on the disc (noted by the MP3 or WMA file extension) and all folders containing MP3 and WMA files, from F001 (folder) T001 (track) to F253 T255.
- Creating discs with only one level of folders helps with navigation through the disc files.

If you are burning your own MP3 and WMA discs, it is important to understand how the system reads the structures you create. While various files may be present, (files with extensions other than MP3 and WMA), only files with the MP3 and WMA extension are played; other files are ignored by the system. This enables you to use the same MP3 and WMA disc for a variety of tasks on your work computer, home computer and your in-vehicle system.

In track mode, the system displays and plays the structure as if it were only one level deep (all MP3 and WMA files play, regardless of being in a specific folder). In folder mode, the system only plays the MP3 and WMA files in the current folder.

## AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: PREMIUM AM/FM/CD

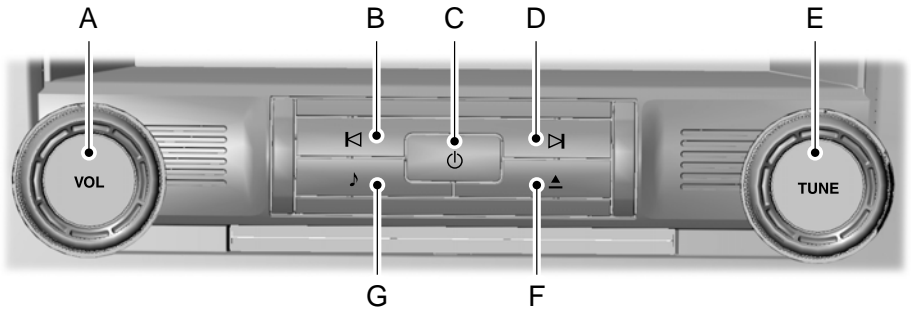
### WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

**Note:** *The touchscreen system controls most of the audio features. See your SYNC information.*

# Audio System



E174101

- A **VOL:** Turn the dial to adjust the system volume.
- B **Seek and Reverse:** In radio mode, select a frequency band and press this button. The system stops at the first station down the band. Press and hold the button to move quickly to the previous strong radio station or memory preset. In CD mode, press this button to select the previous track. Press and hold the button to move quickly backward through the current track.
- C **Power:** Press this button to turn the system off and on.
- D **Seek and Fast Forward:** In radio mode, select a frequency band and press this button. The system stops at the first station up the band. Press and hold the button to move quickly to the next strong radio station or memory preset. In CD mode, press this button to select the next track. Press and hold the button to move quickly forward through the current track.
- E **TUNE:** Once you select a frequency band, turn the dial to find the desired station.
- F **Eject:** Press this button to eject a CD.
- G **Sound:** Press this button to access settings for Treble, Midrange, Bass, Fade and Balance.

## DIGITAL RADIO

The system allows you to listen to DAB (Digital Audio Broadcast) radio stations.

**Note:** Coverage differs from region to region and will influence the quality of reception. It is broadcast nationwide, regionally and locally.

# Audio System

---

The following formats are supported:

- DAB
- DAB+
- DMB-Audio (Digital Multimedia Broadcasting).

## Ensembles

Ensembles contain a group of radio stations. Each ensemble can consist of several different radio stations.

The radio station name displays below the ensemble name.

**Note:** *When you tune from one ensemble to another, it can take a while until the system synchronizes to the next ensemble. The system mutes during synchronization.*

## Selecting Radio Band

DAB 1, DAB 2 and DAB 3 operate in the same way. You can store up to 10 different presets on each band.

1. Press the **RADIO** button.
2. Press the left arrow button to display the available wavebands.
3. Select **DAB 1**, **DAB 2** or **DAB 3**.

**Note:** *When you reach the first or last radio station within an ensemble, further tuning will skip to the next ensemble. There may be a delay during this change and the audio will briefly mute.*

## Radio Station Tuning Controls

### Seek Tuning (Alternative 1)

Press a seek button. The system will stop at the first radio station it finds in the direction chosen

### Radio Station List (Alternative 2)

This feature displays all the available radio stations in a list.

1. Press the browse button.

2. Press the previous or next arrow buttons to change ensembles.
3. Navigate through the list and select the required station by pressing the touch screen button for the station.
4. Press **OK** to confirm your selection.

**Note:** *The display will only show radio stations in the current ensemble.*

## Manual Tuning (Alternative 3)

Press the tune plus or tune minus buttons.

## Radio Station Preset Buttons

This feature allows you to store up to 6 favorite radio stations from any ensemble in each preset bank.

1. Select a radio station.
2. Press and hold one of the preset buttons. A progress bar and message will appear. When the progress bar completes the radio station has been stored. The system will mute momentarily as confirmation.

Once stored press a preset button at any time to select a favorite radio station.

**Note:** *Radio stations stored on the preset buttons may not always be available if you have left the coverage area. The system will mute when this happens.*

## Radio Text

You can display extra information. For example; artist name. To switch this option on, select the radio text on feature in the options menu.

**Note:** *Extra information may not always be available.*

## Service Linking

If you leave the coverage area of a DAB radio station the system will automatically switch to the corresponding FM radio station.

# Audio System

---

You can switch this feature on and off.

See your SYNC information.

**Note:** *If a DAB radio station has no corresponding FM radio station, the audio will mute when attempting to switch.*

**Note:** *The system will display the FM symbol when DAB and FM radio stations link.*

## USB PORT (If Equipped)



E176344

The USB port allows you to plug in media playing devices, memory sticks and charge devices (if supported). See your SYNC information.

## MEDIA HUB (If Equipped)

The media hub is located in the center console and has the following features:



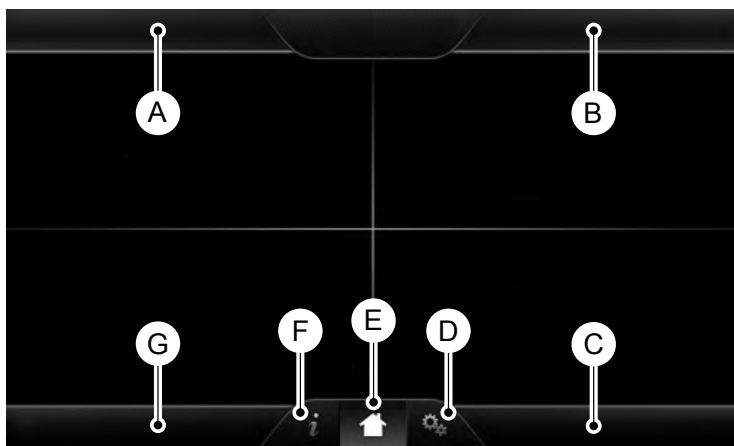
E201595

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



E161891

Item	Message
A	Phone
B	Navigation
C	Climate
D	Settings

Item	Message
E	Home
F	Information
G	Entertainment



# SYNC™ 2

This system uses a four-corner strategy to provide quick access to several vehicle features and settings. The touchscreen provides easy interaction with your cellular phone, multimedia, climate control and navigation system. The corners display any active modes within those menus, such as phone status or the climate temperature.

**Note:** *Some features are not available while your vehicle is moving.*

**Note:** *Your system is equipped with a feature that allows you to access and control audio features for 10 minutes after you switch the ignition off (and no doors open).*

## PHONE

**Press to select any of the following:**

Message
Phone
Speed dial
Phonebook
Call history
Messaging
Settings

## NAVIGATION

**Press to select any of the following:**

Message
My home
Favourites
Previous destinations
Place of interest
Emergency
Address

Message
Junction
Town centre
Latitude/Longitude
Edit route
Cancel Route

## CLIMATE

Press the corresponding icons to control the following options:

- Driver Settings
- Recirculated Air
- Auto
- Dual
- Passenger Settings
- A/C
- Defrost

## SETTINGS



**Press to select any of the following:**

Message
Clock
Display
Sound
Vehicle
Settings
Help

# SYNC™ 2

## HOME



Press to access the home screen.

**Note:** Depending on your vehicle's option package and software, the screens may vary in appearance from the descriptions in this section. The features may also be limited depending on the market. Check with an authorized dealer for availability.

## INFORMATION



**Press to select any of the following:**

Message
Traffic
Notific.
Calendar
Apps
Where am I?

## ENTERTAINMENT

**Press to select any of the following:**

Message
AM
FM
DAB *
CD
USB
BT audio
SD card

\* If equipped.

## Using the Audio Controls

**Depending on your vehicle, it may also have the following controls:**

Controls	Action and Description
Power	Switch the media features on or off.
Volume	Adjust the volume of playing media.
Seek	Use as you normally would in media modes.
Tune	Use as you normally would in media modes.
Eject	Eject a CD from the entertainment system.
Display	Press this button to switch the display screen off. Press again, or touch the screen to switch the display screen on.
Source	Touch the control repeatedly to switch between media modes.

Controls	Action and Description
Sound	Adjust the settings for:
	Bass
	Treble
	Midrange
	Set balance and fade
	DSP
	EQ mode
	Adaptive volume

## Using the Steering Wheel Controls

Depending on your vehicle and option package, you can use your steering wheel controls to interact with the touchscreen system.

- **VOL:** Control the volume of audio output.
- **Mute:** Mute the audio output.
- **Voice:** Press to start a voice session. Press again and hold to end a voice session.
- **SEEK and PHONE ACCEPT:**
  - While in radio mode, press to seek between memory presets or press and hold to seek between stations.
  - While in USB or CD mode, press to seek between stations or press and hold to fast seek.
  - While in phone mode, press to answer a call, or to switch between calls.

## • **SEEK and PHONE REJECT:**

- While in radio mode, press to seek between memory presets or press and hold to seek between stations.
- While in USB or CD mode, press to seek between stations or press and hold to fast seek.
- While in phone mode, press to end a call, or to reject an incoming call.
- **Source:** Touch the control repeatedly to switch between media modes.
- **Sound:** Touch the control to adjust the sound settings. See **Settings** (page 211).

See **Steering Wheel** (page 49).

## **Cleaning the Touchscreen Display**

Use a dry, clean, soft cloth. If dirt or fingerprints are still visible, apply a small amount of alcohol to the cloth. Do not pour or spray alcohol onto the display. Do not use detergent or any type of solvent to clean the display.

## **Support**

For further support, contact an authorized dealer. For more information, visit the regional Ford website.

## Safety Information

### WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

- Do not attempt to service or repair the system. Have an authorized dealer check your vehicle.
- Do not operate playing devices if the power cords or cables are broken, split or damaged. Place cords and cables out of the way, so they do not interfere with the operation of pedals, seats, compartments or safe driving abilities.

- Do not leave playing devices in your vehicle during extreme conditions as it could cause them damage. See your device's user guide for further information.
- For your safety, some SYNC functions are speed-dependent. Their use is limited to when your vehicle is traveling at speeds under 8 km/h (5 mph).

Make sure that you review your device's manual before using it with SYNC.

### Speed-restricted Features

Some features of this system may be too difficult to use while your vehicle is moving so they are restricted from use unless your vehicle is stationary.

See the following chart for more specific examples.

<b>Restricted features</b>	
System Functionality	Editing settings while the rear view camera or active park assist are active.
Videos, Photos and Graphics	Playing video.
Text Messages	Composing text messages.
	Editing preset text messages.
Navigation	Demo navigation route.

## Privacy Information

When a cell phone connects to SYNC, the system creates a profile that links to that cell phone. The system creates the profile to offer you more mobile features and to operate more efficiently. Among other things, this profile may contain data about your phonebook, text messages (read and unread) and call history. This includes the history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system. If you connect a media player, the system creates and retains an index of supported media content. The system also records a short development log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity. Use the log profile and other system data to improve the system and help diagnose any problems that may occur.

The cell phone profile, media player index and development log remain in the system unless deleted. They are generally accessible in your vehicle only when you connect your cell phone or media player. If you no longer plan to use the system or your vehicle, we recommend you complete a master reset to erase all stored information. See **Information Displays** (page 67).

Special equipment is required to access system data. Access to your vehicle's SYNC module is also required. We will not access the system data for any purpose other than as described without consent. Examples where we can access system data are for a court order, where required by law enforcement, other government authorities or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of us. Further privacy information is available.

## Using Voice Recognition

This system helps you control many features using voice commands. This allows you to keep your hands on the wheel and focus on what is in front of you. The system provides feedback through audible tones, prompts, questions and spoken confirmations depending on the situation and the chosen level of interaction (voice settings).

The system also asks short questions (confirmation prompts) when it is not sure of your request or when there are multiple possible responses to your request.

When using voice commands, words and icons may appear in the lower left status bar indicating the status of the voice command session.

### How to Use Voice Commands



The following are some of the voice commands that you can say at any time during a voice command session.

### Press the voice button and when prompted say:

Voice command
Main menu
Available commands
Previous page
Back
Help

## Helpful Hints

- Make sure the interior of your vehicle is as quiet as possible. Wind noise from open windows and road vibrations may prevent the system from correctly recognizing spoken voice commands.
- After pressing the voice command icon, wait until after the tone sounds and a message appears before saying a voice command. Any voice command spoken prior to this does not register with the system.
- Speak naturally, without long pauses between words.
- At any time, you can interrupt the system while it is speaking by pressing the voice command icon.

## Accessing a List of Available Voice Commands

To access a list of available voice commands you can do either of the following.

## Using the touchscreen, press:

Menu Item
Settings
Help
Voice command list

## Using the steering wheel control, press the voice button and when prompted say one of the following:

Voice Commands
List of commands
Radio list of commands
Phone list of commands
Voice instructions list of commands

## Voice Command Settings

These allow you to customize the level of system interaction, help and feedback. The system defaults to standard interaction that uses candidate lists and confirmation prompts as these provide the highest level of guidance and feedback.

Menu Item	Action and Description	
Interaction mode	Novice	In this mode the system provides detailed interaction and guidance.
	Advanced	This mode has less audible interaction and more tone prompts.
Confirmation prompts	The system uses these short questions to confirm your voice command. If turned off, the system simply makes a best guess as to what you requested. The system may still occasionally ask you to confirm a voice command.	
Phone candidate lists	Candidate lists are lists of possible results from your voice commands. The system creates these lists when it has the same confidence level of several options based on your voice command.	
Media candidate lists		

**Using the touchscreen, press the settings icon, then press:**

Menu Item
Voice settings
Voice control
<b>Select from the following:</b>
Interaction mode
Confirmation prompts
Media candidate lists
Phone candidate lists
Voice control volume

### ***Using Voice Commands with the Touchscreen Options***

The voice command system has a dual mode feature which allows you to switch between using voice commands and making on-screen selections. This is available only when the system displays a list of candidates generated during a voice command session. For example, this can be used when entering a street address or trying to call a contact from a cell phone paired to the system.

## **SETTINGS**



E161968

# SYNC™ 2

Item	Menu Item
A	Clock
B	Display
C	Sound
D	Vehicle
E	Settings
F	Help

## Clock



Under this menu, you can set the clock, access and adjust the display, sound and vehicle settings as well as access settings for specific modes or the help feature.

### To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Settings	Press the settings icon.
Clock	Press the <b>+</b> or <b>-</b> to adjust the time. From this screen, you can also make other adjustments such as 12-hour or 24-hour mode, activate GPS time synchronization and have the system automatically update new time zones. You can also switch the outside air temperature display off and on. It appears at the top center of the touchscreen, next to the time and date.

**Note:** You cannot manually set the date. Your vehicle's GPS does this for you.

**Note:** If the battery has been disconnected, your vehicle needs to acquire a GPS signal to update the clock. Once your vehicle acquires the signal, it may take a few minutes for the update to display the correct time.

## Display



You can adjust the display using the touchscreen or the voice button on the steering wheel controls.



# SYNC™ 2

## To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Settings	Press the settings icon.
Display	

### Then select from the following:

Mode	Allows you to switch the display off. It also allows you to set the screen to a certain brightness or have the system automatically change based on the outside light level. If you also select:	
	Auto	These features will allow you to adjust the dimming of your screen.
	Night	
Edit wallpaper	Allows you to display the default photo or upload your own.	
Auto dim	When set to <b>On</b> , lets you use the automatic dimming feature. When set to <b>Off</b> you are able to adjust the brightness of the screen.	
	Brightness	Make the screen display brighter or dimmer.
Auto dim manual offset	Allows you to adjust screen dimming as the outside lighting conditions change from day to night.	



## To make adjustments using the voice button, press the button and when prompted, say:

Voice command
Display settings

**Note:** Photographs with extremely large dimensions (such as 2048 x 1536) may not be compatible and appear as a blank (black) image on the display.

The system allows you to upload and view up to 32 photos.



To access, press:

## Uploading Photos for Your Home Screen Wallpaper

**Note:** You cannot load photos directly from your camera. You must access the photos either from your USB mass storage device or from an SD card.

# SYNC™ 2

## To upload your photos, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Settings	Press the settings icon.
Display	
Edit wallpaper	Follow the system prompts to upload your photographs.

Only the photograph(s), which meets the following conditions display:

- Compatible file formats are as follows: JPG, GIF, PNG, BMP.
- Each file must be 1.5 MB or less.
- Recommended dimensions: 800 x 384.

## Sound



## To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Menu Item
Settings
Sound
<b>Then select from the following:</b>
Bass
Midrange
Treble
Set balance and fade
DSP occupancy
EQ mode
Adaptive volume

**Note:** Your vehicle may not have all of these sound settings.

## Vehicle



# SYNC™ 2

**To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:**

Menu Item
Settings
Vehicle
<b>Then select from the following:</b>
Ambient light
Camera settings
Enable Valet mode

## **Ambient Lighting (If Equipped)**

When you switch this feature on, ambient lighting illuminates footwells and cupholders with a choice of colors.

**To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:**

Menu Item	Action and Description
Settings	Press the settings icon.
Vehicle	
Ambient light	

- You can then touch the desired color.
- Use the scroll bar to increase or decrease the intensity.
- To switch the feature on or off, press the power button.

## **Camera Settings**



This menu allows you to access settings for your rear view camera.

## To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Settings	Press the settings icon.
Vehicle	
Camera settings	
<b>Then select from the following:</b>	
Enhanced Park Pilot	
Rear camera delay	

You can find more information on the rear view camera system in another chapter. See **Parking Aids** (page 122).

## Enable Valet Mode



Valet mode allows you to lock the system. No information is accessible until the system is unlocked with the correct PIN.

**Note:** *If the system locks, and you need to reset the PIN, contact an authorized dealer.*

## To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Settings	Press the settings icon.
Vehicle	
Enable Valet mode	Then enter a four digit PIN twice, as prompted.
Continue	After you press Continue the system locks until you enter the PIN again.

## Settings

Access and adjust system settings, voice features, as well as phone, navigation and wireless settings.

## System



# SYNC™ 2

## To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Settings	Press the settings icon.
System	

### Then select from the following:

Language	Select to have the touchscreen display in any of the selectable language options*.
Distance	Select to display units in kilometers or miles.
Temperature	Select to display units in Celsius or Fahrenheit.
System prompt volume	Adjust the volume of voice prompts from the system.
Touchscreen button beep	Select to have the system beep to confirm choices made through the touchscreen.
Keyboard layout	Have the touchscreen keyboard display in QWERTY or ABC format.
Install applications	Install any downloaded applications or view the current software licenses.
Master reset	Select to restore factory defaults. This erases all personal settings and personal data.

\* The options include: English, Spanish, French, Portuguese, German, Italian, Dutch, Swedish, Polish, Turkish and Russian. Only four of these languages are available for voice input and output, depending on your location.

## Voice Control



## To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Settings	
Voice control	

### Then select from the following:

# SYNC™ 2

Menu Item	Action and Description
Interaction mode	Standard interaction mode provides more detailed interaction and guidance. Advanced mode has less audible interaction and more tone prompts.
Confirmation prompts	Have the system ask you short questions if it has not clearly heard or understood your request. <b>Note:</b> Even with confirmation prompts turned off, the system may occasionally ask you to confirm settings.
Media candidate lists	Candidate lists are possible results from your voice commands. The system simply makes a best guess at your request with these turned off.
Phone candidate lists	Candidate lists are possible results from your voice commands. The system simply makes a best guess at your request with these turned off.
Voice control volume	This allows you to adjust the system's voice volume level.

## Media Player



### To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Settings	Press the settings icon.
Media Player	

### Then select from the following:

Autoplay	When this feature is on, the system automatically switches to the media source upon initial connection. This allows you to listen to music during the indexing process. When this feature is off, the system does not automatically switch to the inserted media source.
Bluetooth devices	Select to connect, disconnect, add or delete a device. You can also set a device as your favorite so that the system automatically attempts to connect to that device at every ignition cycle.

# SYNC™ 2

Menu Item	Action and Description
Gracenote® database info	This allows you to view the version level of the Gracenote Database.
Gracenote® Management	With this feature on, the Gracenote Database supplies metadata information for your music files. This overrides information from your device. This feature defaults to off.
Cover Art priority	With this feature on, the Gracenote Database supplies cover art for your music files. This overrides any art from your device. This feature defaults to Media Player.

## Navigation



### To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Settings	Press the settings icon.
Navigation	

### Then select from the following:

Map preferences	Switch breadcrumbs on and off.
	Have the system display your turn list top to bottom or bottom to top.
	Switch the Parking POI notification on and off.
Route preferences	Select shortest route, fastest route or ecological route as your preferred route. This route displays first.
	Always use preferred route. If set to yes, the system only calculates a single route. This speeds up your destination entry process.
	Select a low, medium or high cost for the calculated ecological route. This may incur a time penalty.
	Have the system avoid freeways.
	Have the system avoid toll roads.
	Have the system avoid ferries or car trains.

# SYNC™ 2

Menu Item	Action and Description
	Have the system avoid tunnels.
Navigation preferences	Have the system use guidance prompts.
	Have the system automatically fill in Country information.
	Hazard spot warning Have the system activate hazard spot warning in countries where legally allowed.
Traffic preferences	Have the system avoid traffic problems automatically.
	Switch traffic alert notifications on or off.
	Have the system display accident icons.
	Have the system display traffic jam icons.
	Have the system display closed roads.
	Have the system display road work icons.
	Have the system display incident icons.
	Have the system display icons for areas where difficult driving conditions may occur.
	Have the system display icons for areas where snow and ice on the road may occur.
	Have the system display any smog icons.
	Have the system display weather warning icons.
	Have the system display where there may be reduced visibility.
Avoid areas	Enter specific areas that you would like to avoid on planned navigation routes.

## Phone





# SYNC™ 2

**To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:**

<b>Menu Item</b>	<b>Action and Description</b>
Settings	Press the settings icon.
Phone	
<b>Then select from the following:</b>	
Bluetooth devices	Connect, disconnect, add or delete a device, as well as save it as a favorite.
Bluetooth	Switch Bluetooth on and off.
Do not disturb	Have all calls go directly to your voice mail and not ring inside your vehicle. With this feature turned on, text message notifications are also suppressed and do not ring inside your vehicle.
Emergency Assistance	Switch on or turn off the Emergency Assistance feature. See <b>Information</b> (page 241).
Phone ringer	Select the type of notification for phone calls - ring tone, beep, text to speech or silent.
Text message notification	Select the type of notification for text messages - alert tone, beep, text to speech, or have it be silent.
Internet data connection	If compatible with your phone, you can adjust your internet data connection. Select to make your connection profile with the personal area network or to switch off your connection. You can also choose to adjust your settings or have the system always connect, never connect when roaming, or query on connect. Press <b>?</b> for more information.
Manage phonebook	Access features, such as automatic phonebook download, re-download your phonebook, add contacts from your phone as well as delete or upload your phonebook.
Roaming warning	Have the system alert you when in Roaming mode.

## **Wireless and Internet**



Your system has a Wi-Fi feature that creates a wireless network within your vehicle, thereby allowing other devices (such as personal computers or phones) in your vehicle to speak to each other, share files or play

games. Using this Wi-Fi feature, everyone in your vehicle can also access the internet if you have a USB mobile broadband connection inside your vehicle, your phone supports personal area networking or if you park outside a wireless hotspot.

# SYNC™ 2

## To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Settings	Press the settings icon.
Wireless & Internet	
<b>Then select from the following:</b>	
Wi-Fi settings	Wi-Fi network (client) mode
	Turns the Wi-Fi feature on and off in your vehicle. Make sure you switch it on for connectivity purposes.
	Choose a wireless network
	Allows you to use a previously stored wireless network. You can categorize by alphabetical listing, priority and signal strength. You can also choose to search for a network, connect to a network, disconnect from a network, receive more information, prioritize a network or delete a network.
	Gateway (access point) mode
	Makes SYNC an access point for a phone or a computer when turned on. This forms the local area network within your vehicle for things, such as game playing, file transfer and internet browsing. Press <b>?</b> for more information.
USB mobile broadband	Gateway (access point) settings
	Allows you to view and change settings for using SYNC as the internet gateway.
	Gateway (access point) devices list
	Allows you to view recent connections to your Wi-Fi system.
Instead of using Wi-Fi, your system can also use a USB mobile broadband connection to access the internet. (You must switch on your mobile broadband device on your personal computer before connecting it to the system.) This screen allows you to set up what is your typical area for your USB mobile broadband connection. (USB mobile broadband settings may not display if the device is already on.) You can select the following:	
Country	
Carrier	

# SYNC™ 2

Menu Item	Action and Description
	Phone number
	Username
	Password
Bluetooth settings	Shows you the currently paired devices as well as giving you your typical Bluetooth options to connect, disconnect, set as favorite, delete and add device. Bluetooth is a registered trademark of the Bluetooth SIG.
Prioritise connection methods	Choose your connection methods and change them as needed. You can select to change order and have the system either always attempt to connect using a USB mobile broadband or using Wi-Fi.

The Wi-Fi CERTIFIED Logo is a certification mark of the Wi-Fi Alliance.



## Help



E142626

### To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Settings	Press the settings icon.
Help	

### Then select from the following:

System information	Touchscreen system serial number
	Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
	Touchscreen system software version
	Navigation system version
	Map database version
	Gracenote® Database Information and Library version

# SYNC™ 2

Menu Item	Action and Description	
View software licences	View the licenses for any software and applications installed on your system.	
Driving restrictions	Certain features are not accessible when your vehicle is moving.	
Emergency Assistance	Switch on and off the Emergency Assistance feature. See <b>Information</b> (page 241).	
	In Case of Emergency (ICE) speed dial	Allows you to save up to two numbers as ICE contacts for quick access if there is an emergency. The ICE contacts you select appear at the end of the Emergency Assistance call process.
	Edit	Select to access your phonebook and then select the desired contacts. The numbers then appear as options on this screen for the ICE 1 and ICE 2 buttons.
Voice command list	View categorized lists of voice commands.	



You can also access Help using the voice commands. The system provides allowable voice commands for the current mode.

**Press the voice button and when prompted say:**

Voice command
Help

You can say help at any time to get assistance with commands, menus or other information.

## ENTERTAINMENT



E161892

Message	Message and Description
A	AM
B	FM
C	DAB
D	CD
E	USB
F	Touch this button to scroll down for more options, such as SD Card and BT Stereo.

Message	Message and Description
G	These buttons change with the media mode you are in.
H	Radio memory presets and CD controls.

**Note:** Some features may not be available in your area. Contact an authorized dealer for more information.

You can access these options using the touchscreen or voice commands.

### AM/FM/DAB Radio



The following controls are available for AM/FM/DAB radio

# SYNC™ 2

## Controls

Item	Action and Description	
AM FM DAB	Touch either tab to listen to the radio. To change between AM, FM and DAB presets, just touch the <b>AM</b> , <b>FM</b> or <b>DAB</b> tab.	
Presets	Save a station by pressing and holding one of the memory preset areas. There is a brief mute while the radio saves the station. Sound returns when finished.	
Scan	Touch this button to go to the next strong AM, FM or DAB radio station. The light on the button illuminates when the feature is on.	
Information	(DAB only)	When the info button is pressed, the system shows the corresponding block number for the active DAB radio station. If you press the info button a second time the radio station name is displayed again.
Tune	For AM and FM only, touch this button to manually enter the desired station number. Touch <b>Enter</b> when you are done.	
TA	Turn on to receive traffic announcements.	
Browse	See a list of all currently available radio stations.	

## Options

Menu Item	Action and Description
Sound settings	Touch this button to adjust settings for:
	Bass
	Midrange
	Treble
	Set balance and fade
	DSP occupancy
	EQ mode
	Adaptive volume
Radio text	This allows you to view the information broadcast by FM stations.

# SYNC™ 2

Menu Item	Action and Description
AST	AST (Autostore) allows you to have the system automatically store the six strongest stations in your current location.
News announcement	With news announcement option active, the system interrupts active audio source to provide incoming news announcements, if currently tuned station (or last tuned station in case of other media active) supports news.
Regional	With Regional option active, the system stays on the regional subprogram instead of switching to a different frequency with better reception.
Alternate frequency	With alternative frequency option active, the system re-tunes to a different frequency with better reception for the same station.
Service linking	With Service Linking active, the system automatically switches from DAB to FM, in case DAB becomes unavailable.

**Note:** *Your vehicle may not have all these sound settings.*

## Radio Voice Commands



**Press the voice button and when prompted say:**

Voice command	
Radio	
<b>Then you can say a command similar to the following:</b>	
FM	Say a frequency or preset.
DAB	Say a preset.
Radio off	
help	

# SYNC™ 2

## CD



To access, press the lower left corner on the touchscreen, then select:

Menu Item
CD

Insert your CD then select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Repeat	Touch this button to repeat the currently playing track, all tracks on the disc or switch the feature off if already on.
Shuffle	Touch this button to play the tracks or entire albums in random order, or switch the feature off if already on.
Scan	Touch this button to hear a brief sampling of all available tracks.
More info	Touch this button to see disc information.
Browse	Touch this button to look through all available CD tracks.

To adjust the Sound Settings, select:

Menu Item
Options
Sound settings
<b>Then any of the following:</b>
Bass
Midrange
Treble
Set balance and fade
DSP occupancy
EQ mode
Adaptive volume

**Note:** Your vehicle may not have all these sound settings.

## CD Voice Commands



If you are listening to a CD, press the voice button on the steering wheel controls. When prompted, say any of the following commands.



If you are not listening to a CD, press the voice button and, after the tone, say:

Voice command
CD Player

When listening to a CD you can say many commands. Following are a few examples of what you can say.

Voice command
Play
Pause
Next track
Previous track
help

\*This applies to WMA or MP3 files only.

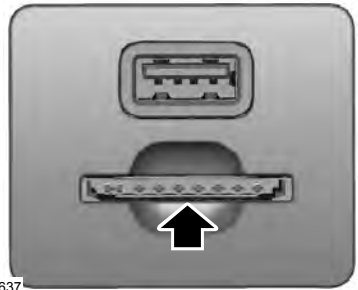
## SD Card Slot and USB Port

The SD card slot and USB port are located in the Media Hub. See **Media Hub** (page 203).

### SD Card

**Note:** Your SD card slot is spring-loaded. To remove the SD card, press the card in and the system ejects it. Do not attempt to pull the card to remove it as this could cause damage.

**Note:** The navigation system also uses this card slot. See **Navigation** (page 248).



E196637

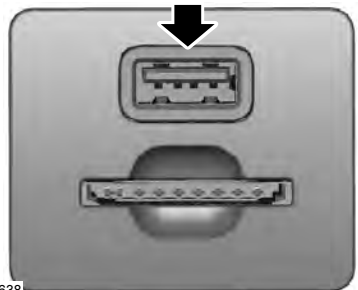
To access and play music from your device, press the lower left corner of the touchscreen.



E142620

SD logo is a trademark of SD-3C, LLC.

### USB Port



E196638

To access and play music from your device, press the lower left corner of the touchscreen.

# SYNC™ 2

This feature allows you to plug in media playing devices, memory sticks, flash drives or thumb drives, and charge devices if they support this feature.

## Playing Music from Your Device

**Note:** *The system is capable of indexing up to 30,000 songs.*



### Insert your device and select:

Message	Action and Description
USB SD card	Once the system recognizes your USB or SD card you can then select from the following options:
Repeat	This feature replays the currently playing song or album.
Shuffle	Touch this button to play music on the selected album or folder in random order.
Similar music	This feature allows you to choose music similar to what is currently playing.
More info	Touch this button to see disc information, for example current track, artist name, album and genre.
Options	Touch this button to view and adjust various media settings.

## Sound

### Sound settings allows you to adjust settings for:

Message	Action and Description
Bass	
Midrange	
Treble	
Set balance and fade	
DSP occupancy	
EQ mode	
Adaptive volume	
Media player settings	Allows you to select more settings, which is under Media Player. See <b>Settings</b> (page 211).

# SYNC™ 2

Message	Action and Description
Device information	Displays software and firmware information about the currently connected media device.
Update media index	Indexes your device when you connect it for the first time and each time the content changes (for example adding or removing tracks) to make sure you have the latest voice commands available for all media on the device.

**Note:** *Your vehicle may not have all these sound settings.*

## Browse

This feature allows you to view the contents of the device. It also allows you to search by categories, for example genre, artist or album.

If you want to view song information, for example Title, Artist, File, Folder, Album, and Genre, touch the on-screen album art.

## You can also select:

Message	Action and Description
What's playing?	To hear how the system pronounces the current band and song. This can be helpful when using voice commands to make sure the system correctly plays your request.

## USB and SD Card Voice Commands



The voice system allows you to control your media with voice commands. For example, if you are listening to music on your USB device, and wish to change songs, you can press the voice button and the system provides you with audio prompts.

## Press the voice button and when prompted say:

Voice command
SD card
USB
<b>Then commands such as the following:</b>

# SYNC™ 2

Voice command	
Browse	
Next track	
Pause	
Play	Say the name of what you would like to listen to such as a band, song, album or playlist.
Play Artist ____	*
Play Song ____	*
Play similar music	
Help	

\* \_\_\_\_ is a dynamic listing, meaning that it could be the name of anything, such as a group, artist or song. For example you could say "Play artist The Beatles" or "Play song Penny Lane".

## Supported Media Players, Formats and Metadata Information

SYNC is capable of hosting nearly any digital media player, including iPod, Zune™, plays from device players, and most USB drives. Supported audio formats include MP3, WMA, WAV and AAC.

It is also able to organize your indexed media from your playing device by metadata tags. Metadata tags, which are descriptive software identifiers embedded in the media files, provide information about the file.

If your indexed media files contain no information embedded in these metadata tags, SYNC may classify the empty metadata tags as unknown.

## Bluetooth Audio

The system allows you to stream audio over your vehicle's speakers from your connected, Bluetooth-enabled cell phone.



**To access, press the lower left corner on the touchscreen, then select:**

Message
BT audio

## Bluetooth Audio Voice Commands



The voice system allows you to control your media with a simple voice command. For example to change songs, press the voice button and follow the system prompts.

## PHONE



E161968

Item	Menu Item
A	Phone
B	Speed dial
C	Phonebook
D	History
E	Messaging
F	Settings

Hands-free calling is one of the main features of SYNC. Once you pair your cell phone, you can access many options using the touchscreen or voice commands. While the system supports a variety of features, many are dependent on your cell phone's functionality.

At a minimum, most cell phones with Bluetooth wireless technology support the following functions:

- Answering an incoming call.
- Ending a call.
- Dialing a number.
- Call waiting notification.
- Caller ID.

# SYNC™ 2

Other features, such as text messaging using Bluetooth and automatic phonebook download, are phone-dependent features. To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's user manual or the local Ford website.

## Pairing Your Cell Phone for the First Time

### WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

The first thing you must do to use the phone features of SYNC is to pair your Bluetooth-enabled cell phone with SYNC. This allows you to use your cell phone in a hands-free manner.

### Touch the upper left corner of the touchscreen:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Pair phone	
Find SYNC	Follow the on-screen instructions. Make sure that Bluetooth is set to <b>On</b> and that your cell phone is in the correct mode. See your cell phone's manual if necessary. Select <b>SYNC</b> and a six-digit PIN appears on your device. If you are prompted to enter a PIN on your device, it does not support Secure Simple Pairing. To pair, enter the PIN displayed on the touchscreen. Skip the next step. When prompted on your cell phone's display, confirm that the PIN provided by SYNC matches the PIN displayed on your cell phone. The display indicates when the pairing is successful. SYNC may prompt you with more cell phone options. For more information on your cell phone's capability, see your cell phone's manual and visit the local Ford website.

# SYNC™ 2

## Pairing Subsequent Cell Phones

Make sure that Bluetooth is set to **On** and

that your cell phone is in the correct mode. See your device's manual if necessary.

### To pair a subsequent cell phone, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Phone	
Settings	
Bluetooth devices	
Add Device	
Find SYNC	<p>Follow the on-screen instructions. Make sure that Bluetooth is set to <b>On</b> and that your cell phone is in the correct mode. See your cell phone's manual if necessary.</p> <p>Select <b>SYNC</b> and a six-digit PIN appears on your device. If you are prompted to enter a PIN on your device, it does not support Secure Simple Pairing. To pair, enter the PIN displayed on the touchscreen. Skip the next step.</p> <p>When prompted on your cell phone's display, confirm that the PIN provided by SYNC matches the PIN displayed on your cell phone.</p> <p>The display indicates when the pairing is successful. SYNC may prompt you with more cell phone options. For more information on your cell phone's capability, see your cell phone's manual and visit the website.</p>

## Making Calls



Press the voice button and say a command similar to the following:

Voice command
Call name
Dial number

You can say the name of a person from your phone book to call or say a number to dial. For example "Call Jenny" or "Dial 867-5309".



To end the call or exit phone mode, press and hold the phone button.

## Receiving Calls

During an incoming call, an audible tone sounds. Call information appears in the display if it is available.



To accept the call, select:

Menu Item
Accept

**Note:** You can also accept the call by pressing the phone button on the steering wheel.



To reject the call, select:

Menu Item
Reject

**Note:** You can also reject the call by pressing the phone button on the steering wheel.

Ignore the call by doing nothing. SYNC logs it as a missed call.

## Phone Menu Options

Press the top left corner on the touchscreen to select from the following options:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Phone	Touch this button to access the on-screen numerical pad to enter a number and place a call. During an active call, you can also choose any of these options:
	Mute call
	Hold call
	Hands-free off
	Join calls
	End



# SYNC™ 2

Menu Item	Action and Description
Speed dial	Select to call stored contacts.
Phonebook	Touch this button to access and call any contacts in your previously downloaded phonebook. The system places the entries in alphabetical categories summarized at the top of the screen
	To turn on contact picture settings, if your device supports this feature, select:
	Phone
	Settings
	Manage phonebook
	Display photos from phonebook
	Certain smartphones may support transferring street addresses when listed with phonebook contact information. If your cell phone supports this feature, you can select and use these addresses as destinations and save them as favorites.
Call history	<b>Note:</b> This is a cell phone-dependent feature. If your cell phone does not support downloading call history using Bluetooth, SYNC keeps track of calls made with the SYNC system. After you connect your Bluetooth-enabled cell phone to SYNC, you can access any previously dialed, received or missed calls. You can also choose to save these to:
	Favourites
Messaging	Send text messages using the touchscreen. See <b>Text Messaging</b> later in this section.
Settings	Touch this button to access various phone settings, for example turning Bluetooth on and off, managing your phonebook and more. See <b>Phone Settings</b> later in this section

## Text Messaging

**Note:** Downloading and sending text messages using Bluetooth are cell phone-dependent features.

**Note:** Certain features in text messaging are speed-dependent and not available when your vehicle is traveling at speeds over 8 km/h (5.0 mph).

**Note:** SYNC does not download read text messages from your cell phone.

You can send and receive text messages using Bluetooth, read them aloud and translate text messaging acronyms, for example LOL.

# SYNC™ 2

**Touch the top left corner of the display, then select:**

Menu Item
Phone
Messaging
<b>Then any of the following:</b>
Listen (speaker icon)
Dial
Send text

Menu Item
View
Delete
Delete All

## Composing a Text Message

**Note:** *This is a speed-dependent feature. It is unavailable when your vehicle is traveling at speeds over 8 km/h (5 mph).*

**Note:** *Downloading and sending text messages using Bluetooth are cell phone-dependent features.*

**To compose and send a text message, select:**

Menu Item	Action and Description
Phone	
Messaging	
Send text	Enter a cell phone number or choose from your phonebook.
Edit text	Allows you to customize the pre-defined message or create a message on your own.
Send	Sends the message as it is.

You can then preview the message, verify the recipient as well as update the message list, and send it to a connected device, for example a USB drive.

## Text Message Options

Messages
I'll call you back in a few minutes.
I just left, I'll be there soon.
Can you give me a call?
I'm on my way.
I'm running a few minutes late.

Messages
I'm ahead of schedule, so I'll be there early.
I'm outside.
I'll call you when I get there.
OK
Yes
No
Thanks

# SYNC™ 2

Messages
Stuck in traffic.
Call me later.

Messages
LOL

## Receiving a Text Message

**When a new message arrives, an audible tone sounds and the screen displays a pop-up with the caller name and ID, if supported by your cell phone. You can select:**

Menu Item	Action and Description
View	To view the text message.
Listen	For SYNC to read the message to you.
Dial	To call the contact.
Ignore	To exit the screen.

## Phone Settings

**To enter the phone settings menu select:**

Menu Item	Action and Description
Phone	
Settings	

### Then any of the following:

Bluetooth devices	Connect, disconnect, add or delete a device, as well as save it as a favorite.
Bluetooth	To turn Bluetooth off or on.
Do not disturb	If you want all calls to go directly to your voicemail and not ring in the vehicle. When this feature is on, text message notifications do not ring inside the cabin either.
Emergency Assistance	Switch the Emergency Assistance feature on or off. See <b>Information</b> (page 241).
Phone ringer	Select the ring tone you want to hear when you receive a call. Choose from possible system ring tones, your currently paired cell phone's ring tone, a beep, text-to-speech or a silent notification.

# SYNC™ 2

Menu Item	Action and Description
Text message notification	Select a text message notification, if supported by your cell phone. Choose from possible system alert tones, text-to-speech or silent.
Internet data connection	If your cell phone is compatible, use this screen to adjust your internet data connection. Select to make your connection profile with the personal area network or to turn off your connection. You can also choose to adjust your settings or have the system always connect, never connect when roaming or query on connect. Press ? for more information.
Manage phonebook	To access features such as automatic phonebook download, re-download your phonebook, add contacts from your cell phone as well as delete or upload your phonebook.
Roaming warning	To have the system alert you when your cell phone is in roaming mode.

## Phone Voice Commands



**Press the voice button and when prompted say any of the following or a similar command:**


Voice command
Call voicemail
Listen to text message
Reply to text message
Pair Bluetooth
help

## INFORMATION




E161889

Item	Menu Item
A	Traffic
B	Notifications
C	Calendar
D	SYNC-Apps
E	Where Am I?

 If your vehicle is equipped with Navigation, press the **Information** button to access these features. If your vehicle is not equipped with Navigation, press the corner of the touchscreen with the green tab.

### Notifications

 If your vehicle is equipped with Navigation, touch the **Information** button to access these features. If your vehicle is not equipped with Navigation, touch the corner of the touchscreen with the green tab.

## Press Notifications, and then choose from any of the following services:

Menu Item	Action and Description
View	The complete message
Delete	The message
Delete All	Messages

This screen displays any system messages (such as an SD card fault).

**Note:** *The system alerts you to any messages by turning the information icon yellow. After you read or delete the messages, the icon returns to white.*

## Calendar



If your vehicle is equipped with Navigation, touch the I (Information) button to access these features. If your vehicle is not equipped with Navigation, touch the corner of the touchscreen with the green tab.

Press **Calendar**. You can view the current calendar by day, week or month.

## Emergency Assistance (If Equipped)

### WARNINGS



For this feature to work, your mobile phone must be Bluetooth capable and compatible with the system.



Always place your mobile phone in a secure location inside your vehicle. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone or damage the phone which could prevent Emergency Assistance from working correctly.



Unless the Emergency Assistance setting is set to on prior to a collision, the system will not attempt to place an emergency call which could delay the response time, potentially increasing the risk of serious injury or death. Do not wait

### WARNINGS

for Emergency Assistance to make an emergency call if you can do it yourself. Dial emergency services immediately to avoid a delayed response time. If you do not hear Emergency Assistance within five seconds of the crash, the system or cell phone may be damaged or non-functional.

**Note:** *Before setting the feature on, please read the important notice about the Emergency Assistance feature and the Emergency Assistance privacy notice later in this section for important information.*

**Note:** *When you switch Emergency Assistance on or off, the setting apply to all paired mobile phones. If you switch Emergency Assistance off and a previously paired phone connects when you switch the ignition on, either a voice message plays, a display message or icon is shown, or both.*

**Note:** *Every mobile phone operates differently. While Emergency Assistance works with most mobile phones, some mobile phones may experience difficulties using this feature.*

If a crash deploys an airbag or triggers the fuel pump shut off, the system may contact emergency services by dialing 112 (the wireless emergency number that works in most European countries) through a paired and connected cell phone. For more information about the system and Emergency Assistance, visit the regional Ford website.

**Note:** *In case of an emergency, Emergency Assistance, as a means of communication aid, can help you contact specific rescue departments of public security. Emergency Assistance does not implement the rescue operations. The local public security department deploys specific rescue operations according to the actual situation.*

See **Supplementary Restraints System** (page 23). Important information regarding airbag deployment is in this chapter.

See **Roadside Emergencies** (page 140). Important information regarding the fuel pump shut-off is in this chapter.

## Setting Emergency Assistance On



**If your vehicle is equipped with Navigation, touch the I (Information) button to access these features. If your vehicle is not equipped with Navigation, touch the corner of the touchscreen with the green tab. Then select:**

Menu Item
Apps
Emergency Assistance
On



## Display Options

If you switch on this feature, a confirmation message appears in the display when your cell phone connects and your vehicle starts.

If you switch off this feature, the dialog allows you to set a reminder.

Off with reminder provides a display and voice reminder when your cell phone connects and your vehicle starts.

Off without reminder provides a display reminder only without a voice reminder when your cell phone connects.

To make sure that Emergency Assistance works correctly:

- The system must have power and be working correctly at the time of the crash and during feature activation and use.
- You must switch on the feature before a crash.
- You must have a cell phone connected to the system.
- In certain countries, it may be necessary to have a valid and registered SIM card with credit in order to place and maintain an emergency call.
- A connected cell phone must have the ability to make and maintain an outgoing call at the time of the crash.
- A connected cell phone must have adequate network coverage, battery power and signal strength.
- Your vehicle must have battery power.

**Note:** *This feature only works in a European country or region where SYNC Emergency Assistance can call the local emergency services. Visit the regional Ford website for details.*

## In the Event of a Crash

**Note:** *Not every crash deploys an airbag or triggers the fuel pump shut off (which may turn on Emergency Assistance). However, if Emergency Assistance is triggered the system tries to contact the emergency services. If a connected cell phone sustains damage or loses connection to the system, it searches for and tries to connect to any available previously paired cell phone. The system attempts to dial 112.*

Before making a call:

- If you do not cancel the call and SYNC makes a successful call, an introductory message plays for the emergency operator. After this message, there is hands-free communication between your vehicle's occupants and the operator.
- The system provides a short window of time (approximately 10 seconds) to cancel the call. If you do not cancel the call, the system attempts to dial 112.
- The system plays a message letting you know when it attempts to make an emergency call. You can cancel the call by selecting the relevant button or by pressing the end call button on the steering wheel.

During a call:

- Emergency Assistance uses your vehicle GPS or cellular network information when available to determine the most appropriate language to use. It alerts the emergency operator of the crash and delivers the introductory message. This may include your vehicle GPS coordinates.
- The language the system uses to interact with the occupants of your vehicle may differ from the language used to deliver information to the emergency operator.

- After the delivery of the introductory message the voice line opens so that you can speak hands-free with the emergency operator.
- When the line is connected, you must be prepared to provide your name, phone number and location information immediately.

**Note:** *While the system provides information to the emergency operator, the system plays a message letting you know it is sending important information. It then lets you know when the line is open to start hands-free communication.*

**Note:** *During an Emergency Assistance call, an emergency priority screen appears which contains vehicle GPS coordinates when available.*

**Note:** *It is possible that GPS location information is not available at the time of the crash; in this case, Emergency Assistance will still attempt to place an emergency call.*

**Note:** *It is possible that the emergency services will not receive the GPS coordinates; in this case, hands-free communication with an emergency operator is available.*

**Note:** *The emergency operator may also receive information from the cellular network such as cell phone number, cell phone location and cell phone carrier name independent from SYNC Emergency Assistance.*

### **Emergency Assistance may not work if:**

- Your cell phone or Emergency Assistance hardware sustains damage in the crash.
- The vehicle battery or the system has no power.
- A crash ejects your cell phone from your vehicle.



- You do not have a valid and registered SIM card with credit in your cell phone.
- You are in a European country or region where the SYNC Emergency Assistance cannot place the call. Visit the regional Ford website for details.

## Important Information about the Emergency Assistance Feature

Emergency Assistance does not currently call emergency services in the following markets: Albania, Belarus, Bosnia and Herzegovina, Macedonia, Netherlands, Ukraine, Moldova and Russia.

Visit the regional Ford website for latest details.

## Emergency Assistance Privacy Notice

When you switch on Emergency Assistance, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut off. This feature has the capability to disclose your location information to the emergency operator or other details about your vehicle or crash to provide the most appropriate emergency services.

If you do not want to disclose this information, do not switch on the feature.

## Where Am I?

### For vehicle location and information select:

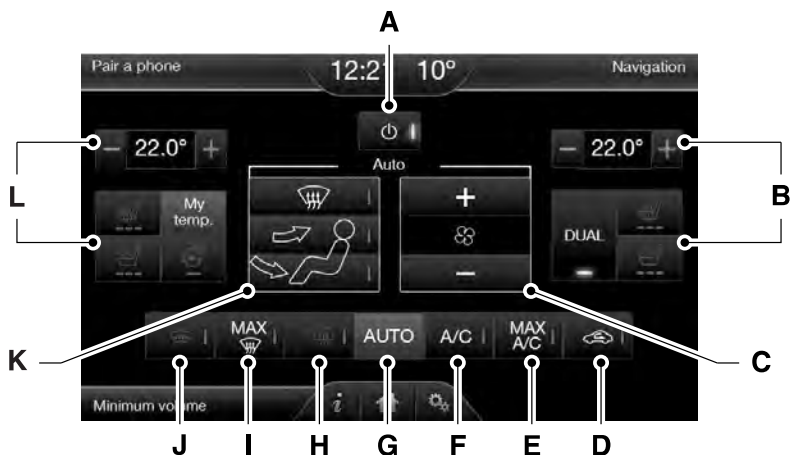
Menu Item	Action and Description
Information	
Help	
<b>Then select:</b>	
Where am I?	View your vehicle's current location, if your vehicle is equipped with navigation. If your vehicle is not equipped with navigation, you do not see this button.

## CLIMATE

Press the lower right corner on the touchscreen to access your climate control features. Depending on your vehicle line and option package, your climate screen may look different from this screen.

**Note:** You can switch temperature units between Fahrenheit and Celsius. See **Settings** (page 211).

# SYNC™ 2



E191835

- A **Power:** Touch to switch the system off and on. Outside air cannot enter your vehicle when you switch off the system.
- B **Passenger settings:** Touch + or – to adjust the temperature.  
Touch the heated seat icon to turn the heated seat off and on (if equipped).  
Touch the climate-controlled seat icon to turn the climate-controlled seat off and on (if equipped).  
**DUAL:** Touch to switch on the passenger temperature control.
- C **Fan speed:** Touch + or - to adjust fan speed.
- D **Recirculated air:** Touch to switch the recirculated air on or off which may reduce the amount of time needed to cool down the interior and help reduce odors from reaching the interior. Recirculated air also engages automatically when MAX A/C or MAX defrost is selected and may be engaged manually in any airflow mode except defrost. It may also turn off in all airflow modes except MAX A/C and MAX defrost to reduce fog potential.
- E **MAX A/C:** Touch to cool your vehicle with recirculated air. Touch again for normal A/C operation. MAX A/C distributes air through instrument panel vents and may help reduce odors from entering your vehicle. MAX A/C is more economical and efficient than normal A/C mode.
- F **A/C:** Touch to switch the air conditioning on or off. Use A/C with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency. A/C engages automatically in MAX A/C, defrost and footwell/defrost.

- G** **AUTO:** Touch to engage automatic operation, then set the temperature using the temperature control. The system automatically controls fan speed, airflow distribution, A/C on or off and the use of fresh or recirculated air.
- H** **Heated rear window:** Turns the heated rear window on and off. See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 90).
- I** **MAX Defrost:** Distributes outside air through the windshield air vents and automatically turns the air conditioning on. The fan is set to the highest speed and the temperature to HI. When the air distribution is set in this position, you are unable to select recirculated air or manually adjust the fan speed and temperature control.
- J** **Heated windscreen:** Press the button to clear the heated windscreen of thin ice and fog.
- K** **Manual airflow distribution controls:**
- Footwell and Defrost:** Distributes air through the windshield defroster vents, demister vents, floor vents and rear seat floor vents, and provides outside air to reduce window fogging.
- Panel:** Distributes air through the instrument panel vents.
- Panel and Floor:** Distributes air through the instrument panel vents, demister vents, floor vents and rear seat floor vents.
- Floor:** Distributes air through the demister vents, floor vents and rear seat floor vents.
- Defrost:** Touch to clear the windshield of fog and thin ice. Touch again to return to the previous airflow selection. When on, defrost provides outside air to reduce window fogging and distributes air through the windshield defroster vents and demister vents.
- L** **Driver settings:** Touch + or – to adjust the temperature.
- Touch the heated seat icon to turn the heated seat off and on (if equipped).
- Touch the climate-controlled seat icon to turn the climate-controlled seat off and on (if equipped).
- Touch **MyTemp** to select your preset temperature setpoint. Touch and hold **MyTemp** to save a new preset temperature setpoint.
- Touch the heated steering wheel icon to turn the heated steering wheel on and off (if equipped).

## Climate Control Voice Commands



Press the voice button on the steering wheel controls. When prompted, say any of the following or a similar command:

# SYNC™ 2

Voice commands	
Climate on	
Climate off	
Set temperature	Adjust the temperature to between 15°C (59.0°F) - 30°C (86.0°F)

## NAVIGATION

**Note:** The navigation SD card must be in the SD card slot to operate the navigation system. If you need a replacement SD card, contact an authorized dealer.

**Note:** The SD card slot is spring-loaded. To remove the SD card, just push the card in and release it. Do not attempt to pull the card out to remove it; this could cause damage.

Your navigation system is comprised of two main features, destination mode and map mode.

## Destination Mode

**To set a destination press the green corner of your touchscreen, then press:**

Menu Item
Dest.
<b>Choose any of the following:</b>
My home
Favourites
Previous destinations
Place of interest
Emergency
Address
Junction
Town centre
Latitude/Longitude
Edit route
Cancel Route

# SYNC™ 2

To set your destination, enter the necessary information into the highlighted text fields (in any order).

## For an address destination entry, press:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Go	Pressing this button makes the address location appear on the map.

## To choose a previous destination, press:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Previous destinations	The last 20 destinations you have selected appear.

## Once you have chosen your destination press:

Menu Item	Action and Description	
Set as destination	To make this your destination. You can also choose to set this as a waypoint (have the system route to this point on the way to your current destination) or save it as a favorite. You can then choose your route from three different options.	
	Fastest	Uses the fastest moving roads possible.
	Shortest	Uses the shortest distance possible.
	Eco route	Uses the most fuel-efficient route.
Avoid areas	Your pre-set selections are considered when your route is calculated. For more information on these selections, see <b>Setting Your Navigation Preferences</b> later in this chapter.	

## To begin navigation press:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Start route	You can cancel the route or have the system demo the route for you.

# SYNC™ 2

Menu Item	Action and Description
	During route guidance, you can press the talking bubble icon that appears in the upper right navigation corner (green bar) if you want the system to repeat route guidance information. When the system repeats the last guidance instruction, it updates the distance to the next guidance instruction, since it detects when the vehicle is moving.

## To set route preferences press:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Route prefs	In route preferences you can set preferences like avoiding motorways, tollroads, ferries and car trains or tunnels.

**Note:** If your vehicle is on a recognized road and you do not press the **Start Route** button, the system defaults to the **Fastest Route** option and begins guidance.

## Michelin Travel Guide (If Equipped)

The Michelin travel guide is a service which provides additional information about certain places of interests (POI) such as restaurants, hotels and touristic sites (if available).

If you have paired your phone with the system, you can press the phone button to directly establish a call with the selected POI.

**Note:** Not all features are available in all languages and countries.

## Places of Interest (POI) Categories

Main categories
Filling station
Parking
Food, Drink and Dining
Automotive

Main categories
Travel and Transportation
Shopping
Financial
Entertainment & Arts
Emergency
Recreation & Sports
Community
Government
Health & Medicine
Domestic Services

To expand these listings, press the + in front of the listing.

The system also allows you to sort alphabetically or by distance.

## Setting Your Navigation Preferences



Select settings for the system to take into account when planning your route.

# SYNC™ 2

**To access the settings options, press:**

Menu Item
Settings
Navigation
<b>Then select any of the following:</b>

## Map Preferences

Menu Item	Second Level Messages, Actions and Descriptions
Map preferences	
<b>Then select any of the following:</b>	
Breadcrumbs	Display your vehicle's previously traveled route with white dots. You can switch this feature:
	On <span style="float: right;">Off</span>
Turn list format	Have the system display your turn list:
	Top to bottom <span style="float: right;">Bottom to top</span>
Parking POI notification	When parking point of interest notification is on, the icons display on the map when you get close to your destination. This may not be very useful in dense areas, and may clutter the map when other points of interest display. Set the automatic parking point of interest notification. You can switch this feature:
	On <span style="float: right;">Off</span>

## Route Preferences

Menu Item	Second Level Messages, Actions and Descriptions
Route preferences	
<b>Then select any of the following:</b>	
Preferred route	Choose to have the system display your chosen route type.
	Shortest <span style="float: right;">Fastest</span> <span style="float: right;">Ecological</span>

# SYNC™ 2

Menu Item	Second Level Messages, Actions and Descriptions
Always use preferred route	Bypass route selection in destination programming. The system only calculates one route based on preferred route setting. When activated, the system uses your selected route type to calculate only one route to the desired destination.
Eco time penalty	Select a level of cost for the calculated Eco Route. The higher the setting, the longer the time allotment is for the route.
Avoid	When activated, you can to choose to have the system avoid motorways, toll roads, ferries, car trains and tunnels when planning your route.

## Navigation Preferences

Menu Item	Second Level Messages, Actions and Descriptions
Navigation preferences	
<b>Then select any of the following:</b>	
Hazard spot warning	Have the system activate hazard spot warning in countries where legally allowed.
Guidance prompts	Select the type of prompts the system uses.
Auto-fill country	Have the system automatically fill in the country based on the information already entered into the system. You can switch this feature:
	On

## Traffic Preferences

Menu Item	Second Level Messages, Actions and Descriptions
Traffic preferences	
<b>Then select any of the following:</b>	
Avoid traffic problems	You can choose how you want the system to handle traffic problems along your route.
	Automatic



# SYNC™ 2

Menu Item	Second Level Messages, Actions and Descriptions	
	Manual	Have the system always provide a traffic alert notification for traffic incidents along the planned route. You have a choice to accept or ignore the notification before making the route deviation.
Traffic alert notification	Activate traffic alert notifications on or off.	
Traffic Icon Settings	You can choose to activate any of the following Traffic Icon Settings.	
	Have the system avoid traffic problems automatically.	
	Switch traffic alert notifications on or off.	
	Have the system display accident icons.	
	Have the system display traffic jam icons.	
	Have the system display closed roads.	
	Have the system display road work icons.	
	Have the system display incident icons.	
	Have the system display icons for areas where difficult driving conditions may occur.	
	Have the system display icons for areas where snow and ice on the road may occur.	
	Have the system display any smog icons.	
	Have the system display weather warning icons.	
	Have the system display where there may be reduced visibility.	
Have the system display icons to recommend switching on your radio for traffic announcements.		

## Avoid Area

Menu Item	Second Level Messages, Actions and Descriptions
Avoid areas	Choose areas which you want the system to avoid when calculating a route for you.
<b>Then select any of the following:</b>	
Add	Once you make a selection, the system tries to avoid the area(s) if possible for all routes. To program an entry, press:
Delete	To delete a section choose the listing on the screen. The screen will change, then press:

## Map Mode

Press the green bar in the upper right area of the touchscreen to view map mode. Map mode shows advanced viewing comprised of both 2D city maps as well as 3D landmarks (when available).

2D city maps show detailed outlines of buildings, visible land use and land elements and detailed railway infrastructure for the most essential cities around the globe. These maps also contain features, such as town blocks, building footprints and railways.

3D landmarks appear as clear, visible objects that are typically recognizable and have a certain tourist value. The 3D landmarks appear in 3D map mode only. Coverage varies and improves with updated map releases.



E174016

Change the appearance of the map display by repeatedly pressing the arrow button in the upper left corner of the screen. It toggles between three different map modes:



(3 mph).



**Heading up (2D map)** This always shows the direction of forward travel to be upward on the screen. This view is available for map scales up to 5 km/h

**North up (2D map)** always shows the northern direction to be upward on the screen.



**3D map mode** provides an elevated perspective of the map. This viewing angle can be adjusted and the map can be rotated 180 degrees by touching

the map twice, and then dragging your finger along the shaded bar with arrows at the bottom of the map.

### You can also select the following options:

Menu Items	
View	Switches between full map, street list and exit view in route guidance.
Menu	Displays a pop-up box that allows direct access to navigation settings.



Press the speaker button on the map to mute route guidance. When the light on the button illuminates, the feature is on. The speaker button appears on the map only when route guidance is active.



Re-center the map by pressing this icon whenever you scroll the map away from your vehicle's current location.

### Auto Zoom

Press the green bar to access map mode, then select the **+** or **-** zoom button to bring up the zoom level and Auto buttons on the touchscreen. When you press **Auto**, Auto Zoom turns on and **Auto** displays in the bottom left corner of the screen in the map scale. The map zoom level then

synchronizes with vehicle speed. The slower your vehicle is traveling, the farther in the map zooms in; the faster your vehicle is traveling, the farther the map zooms out. To switch the feature off, just press the **+** or **-** button again.

In 3D mode, rotate the map view by swiping your finger across the shaded bar with the arrows.

The ETA box under the zoom buttons appears when a route is active and displays the distance and time to your destination. If the button is pressed, a pop up appears with the destination listed (and waypoint if applicable) along with mileage and time to destination. You may also select to have either the estimated time to reach your destination or your estimated arrival time.

### Map Icons



**Vehicle mark** shows the current location of your vehicle. It stays in the center of the map display, except when in scroll mode.



**Scroll cursor** allows you to scroll the map; the fixed icon is in the center of the screen. The map position closest to the cursor is in a window on the top center part of the screen.



**Address book entry default icon(s)** indicates the location on the map of an address book entry. This is the default symbol shown after the entry has been stored to the Address Book by any method other than the map. You can select from any of the 22 icons available. You can use each icon more than once.



**Home** indicates the location on the map currently stored as the home position. You can only save one address from the Address Book as your Home entry. You cannot change this icon.



**POI (Point Of Interest) icons** indicate locations of any point of interest categories you choose to display on the map. You can choose to display three point of interest categories on the map at one time.



**Starting point** indicates the starting point of a planned route.



**Waypoint** indicates the location of a waypoint on the map. The number inside the circle is different for each waypoint and represents the position of the waypoint in the route list.



**Destination symbol** indicates the ending point of a planned route.



**Next maneuver point** indicates the location of the next turn on the planned route.



**No GPS symbol** indicates that insufficient GPS satellite signals are available for accurate map positioning. This icon may display under normal operation in an area with poor GPS access.

## Quick-touch Buttons

When in map mode, touch anywhere on the map display to access the following options:

Menu Item	Action and Description	
Set as destination	Touch this button to select a scrolled location on the map as your destination. You may scroll the map by pressing your index finger on the map display. When you reach the desired location, simply let go and then touch this button.	
Set as waypoint	Touch this button to set the current location as a waypoint.	
Save to favourites	Touch this button to save the current location to your favorites.	
POI icons	Touch this button to select icons to display on the map. You can select up to three icons to display on the map at the same time. You can switch these features:	
	On	Off
Cancel Route	Touch this button to cancel the active route.	

## View/Edit Route

**Access these features when a route is active:**

Menu Item
View route
Edit destination/waypoint
Edit turn list
Re-route
Edit route preferences
Edit traffic preferences
Cancel Route

HERE is the digital map provider for the navigation application. If you find map data errors, you may report them directly to HERE by going to [www.here.com](http://www.here.com). HERE evaluates all reported map errors and responds with the result of their investigation by e-mail.

## Navigation Map Updates

Annual navigation map updates are available for purchase through your dealership.

## Navigation Voice Commands



When in navigation mode, press the voice button on the steering wheel controls.

**After the tone, say any of the following or a similar command:**

Voice command
Destination
Zoom out
Zoom In
Where am I?
help

**The following commands can only be used when a navigation route is active:**

Voice command
Reroute
Cancel route
Show whole route
Repeat last instruction
Show route summary

# SYNC™ 2

## One-shot Destination Street Address

To set a destination with voice commands, you can say:

Voice Command	Action and Description
Destination address	The system asks you to say the full address. The system displays an example on-screen.

You can then speak the address naturally, such as "One two three four Main Street, Anytown".

## SYNC™ TROUBLESHOOTING

Your SYNC system is easy to use. However, should questions arise, please refer to the tables below.

To check your cell phone's compatibility, visit the regional Ford website.

Cell phone issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
A lot of background noise during a phone call.	The audio control settings on your cell phone may be affecting SYNC performance.	Refer to your device's manual about audio adjustments.
During a call, I can hear the other person but they cannot hear me.	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching off your cell phone, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again.
		Make sure that the microphone for SYNC is not set to off.
SYNC is not able to download my phonebook.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Check your cell phone's compatibility.
	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching off your cell phone, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again.
		Try pushing your phonebook contacts to SYNC by selecting the option to add.
The system says "Phonebook downloaded" but my SYNC phonebook is empty or is missing contacts.	Limitations on your cell phone's capability.	You must switch on your cell phone and the automatic phonebook download feature on SYNC.
		Try pushing your phonebook contacts to SYNC by selecting the option to add.

# SYNC™ 2

Cell phone issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
		If the missing contacts are stored on your SIM card, try moving them to your cell phone's memory.
		Remove any pictures or special ring tones associated with the missing contact.
		You must switch on your cell phone and the automatic phonebook download feature on SYNC.
I am having trouble connecting my cell phone to SYNC.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Check your cell phone's compatibility.
	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching off your cell phone, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again.
		Try deleting your device from SYNC and deleting SYNC from your device, then trying again.
		Always check the security and auto accept prompt settings relative to the SYNC Bluetooth connection on your cell phone.
		Update your cell phone's firmware.
Switch off the auto download setting.		
Text messaging is not working on SYNC.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Check your cell phone's compatibility.
	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching off your cell phone, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again.
	iPhone	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Go to your cell phone's Settings.</li> <li>• Go to the Bluetooth Menu.</li> <li>• Make sure the connection status shows Not Connected.</li> <li>• Press the blue circle to enter the next menu.</li> </ul>

## SYNC™ 2

<b>Cell phone issues</b>		
<b>Issue</b>	<b>Possible cause</b>	<b>Possible solution</b>
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Turn on Show Notifications.</li> <li>• Turn on Sync Contacts.</li> </ul> <p>Your iPhone is now set up to forward incoming text messages to SYNC. Repeat these steps for every other Sync vehicle you are connected to. Your iPhone will only forward incoming text messages to SYNC if it is unlocked. Replying to text messages using SYNC is not supported by iPhone. Text messages from WhatsApp and Facebook Messenger are not supported.</p>
Audible text messages do not work on my cell phone.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	<p>Your cell phone must support downloading text messages through Bluetooth to receive incoming text messages.</p> <p>Access the text messaging menu of SYNC to see if your cell phone supports the feature. Press the <b>PHONE</b> button and then scroll and select the option for text messaging, then press <b>OK</b>.</p>
	This is a cell phone limitation.	<p>Because each cell phone is different, refer to your device's manual for the specific cell phone you are pairing. In fact, there can be differences between cell phones due to brand, model, service provider and software version.</p>



# SYNC™ 2

<b>USB and media issues</b>		
<b>Issue</b>	<b>Possible cause</b>	<b>Possible solution</b>
I am having trouble connecting my device.	Possible device malfunction.	Try switching off the device, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again.
		Make sure you are using the manufacturer's cable.
		Make sure correctly insert the USB cable to the device and your vehicle's USB port.
		Make sure that the device does not have an auto-install program or active security settings.
SYNC does not recognize my device when I start my vehicle.	This is a device limitation.	Make sure you are not leaving the device in your vehicle during very hot or cold temperatures.
Bluetooth audio does not stream.	This is a device-dependent feature.	Make sure you connect the device to SYNC and press play on your device.
	The device is not connected.	
SYNC does not recognize music that is on my device.	Your music files may not contain the correct artist, song title, album or genre information.	Make sure that all song details are populated.
	The file may be corrupted.	Try replacing the corrupt file with a new version.
	The song may have copyright protection that does not allow it to play.	Some devices require you to change the USB settings from mass storage to media transfer protocol class.

## SYNC™ 2

<b>USB and media issues</b>		
<b>Issue</b>	<b>Possible cause</b>	<b>Possible solution</b>
When I connect my iPhone or iPod Touch through the USB and Bluetooth Audio at the same time, I sometimes do not hear any sound.	This is a device limitation.	From the iPhone or iPod Touch music now playing screen, select the audio device airplay icon at the very bottom of your iPhone or iPod Touch screen.
		To listen to the iPhone or iPod Touch through Bluetooth Audio, select SYNC.
		To listen to the iPhone or iPod Touch through USB, select Dock Connector.

<b>Voice command issues</b>		
<b>Issue</b>	<b>Possible cause</b>	<b>Possible solution</b>
SYNC does not understand what I am saying.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the cell phone voice commands and the media voice commands at the beginning of their respective sections.
		Refer to the audio display during an active voice session to find a list of voice commands there.
	You may be speaking too soon or at the wrong time.	The microphone for the system is either in your rear view mirror or in the headliner just above the windshield.
SYNC does not understand the name of a song or artist.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the media voice commands at the beginning of the media section.
	You may not be saying the name exactly as the system saved it.	Say the song or artist exactly as the system saved it. If you say, "Play Artist Prince", the system does not play music by Prince and the Revolution or Prince and the New Power Generation.
		Make sure you are saying the complete title such as "California remix featuring Jennifer Nettles".

## SYNC™ 2

<b>Voice command issues</b>			
<b>Issue</b>	<b>Possible cause</b>	<b>Possible solution</b>	
		If the song titles are in capital letters, you have to spell them. LOLA requires you to say "L-O-L-A".	
	The system may not be reading the name the same way you are saying it.	Do not use special characters in the title, as the system does not recognize them.	
SYNC does not understand or is calling the wrong contact when I want to make a call.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the cell phone voice commands at the beginning of the cell phone section.  You can also use the cell phone and media suggestion lists to get a list of possible suggestions when the system cannot fully understand you. See (page 204).	
	You may not be saying the name exactly as the system saved it.	Make sure you are saying the name exactly as the system saved it. For example, if the contact name is Joe Wilson, say "Call Joe Wilson".  The system works better if you list full names such as "Joe Wilson" rather than "Joe".	
	Contacts in your phonebook may be very short and similar or they may contain special characters.	Do not use special characters such as 123 or ICE as the system does not recognize them.	
	Your phonebook contacts may be in capital letters.	If the contacts are in capital letters, you have to spell them. JAKE requires you to say "Call J-A-K-E".	
	The SYNC voice control system is having trouble recognizing foreign names stored on my cell phone.	You may be saying the foreign names using the currently selected language for SYNC.	SYNC applies the phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the contact names stored on your cell phone.

# SYNC™ 2

Voice command issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
		<p><b>Helpful Hint:</b> You can select your contact manually. Press <b>PHONE</b>. Select the option for phonebook and then contact name. Press the soft-key option to hear it. SYNC will read the contact name to you, giving you some idea of the pronunciation it is expecting.</p>
<p>The SYNC voice control system is having trouble recognizing foreign tracks, artists, albums, genres and playlist names from my media player or USB flash drive.</p>	<p>You may be saying the foreign names using the currently selected language for SYNC.</p>	<p>SYNC applies the phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the names stored on your media player or USB flash drive. It is able to make some exceptions for very popular artist names (for example, U2) such that you can always use the English pronunciation for these artists.</p>
<p>The system generates voice prompts and the pronunciation of some words may not be accurate for my language.</p>	<p>SYNC uses text-to-speech voice prompt technology.</p>	<p>SYNC uses a synthetically generated voice rather than pre-recorded human voice.</p> <p>SYNC offers several new voice control features for a wide range of languages. Dialing a contact name directly from the phonebook without pre-recording (for example, "call John Smith") or selecting a track, artist, album, genre or playlist directly from your media player (for example, "play artist Madonna).</p>

# SYNC™ 2


<b>General</b>		
<b>Issue</b>	<b>Possible cause</b>	<b>Possible solution</b>
The language selected for the instrument cluster and information and entertainment display does not match the SYNC language (phone, USB, Bluetooth audio, voice control and voice prompts).	SYNC does not support the currently selected language for the instrument cluster and information and entertainment display.	SYNC only supports four languages in a single module for text display, voice control and voice prompts. The country where you bought your vehicle dictates the four languages based on the most popular languages spoken. If the selected language is not available, SYNC remains in the current active language.
		SYNC offers several new voice control features for a wide range of languages. Dialing a contact name directly from the phonebook without pre-recording (for example, "call John Smith") or selecting a track, artist, album, genre or playlist directly from your media player (for example, play artist Madonna).

<b>SYNC with Touchscreen System Reset</b>
The system has a System Reset feature that can be performed if the function of a SYNC feature is lost. This reset is intended to restore functionality and will not erase any information previously stored in the system (such as paired devices, phonebook, call history, text messages, or user settings). To perform a System Reset, press and hold the Seek Up (>>) button while pressing and holding the Radio Power button. After approximately 5 seconds the screen will go black. Allow 1-2 minutes for the system reset to complete. You may then resume using the SYNC system.





# Appendices

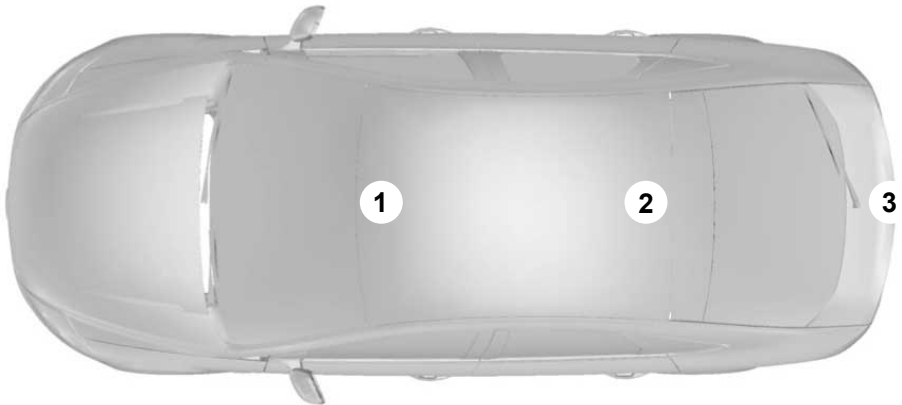
## ELECTROMAGNETIC COMPATIBILITY

### WARNINGS

 Your vehicle has been tested and certified to legislations relating to electromagnetic compatibility (72/245/EEC, UN ECE Regulation 10 or other applicable local requirements). It is your responsibility to make sure that any equipment you have fitted complies with applicable local legislations. Have any equipment fitted by an authorized dealer.

### WARNINGS

-  The radio frequency transmitter equipment, for example cellular telephones and amateur radio transmitters, may only be fitted to your vehicle if they keep to the parameters shown in the table below. There are no special provisions or conditions for installations or use.
-  Do not mount any transceiver, microphones, speakers, or any other item in the deployment path of the airbag system.
-  Do not fasten antenna cables to original vehicle wiring, fuel pipes and brake pipes.
-  Keep antenna and power cables at least 10 cm (3.9 in) from any electronic modules and airbags.



E170906

# Appendices

Frequency Band MHz	Maximum output power Watt (Peak RMS)	Antenna Positions
1-30	50 W	3
30-54	50 W	1, 2
68-87.5	50 W	1, 2
142-176	50 W	1, 2
380-512	50 W	1, 2
806-940	10 W	1, 2
1200-1400	10 W	1, 2
1710-1885	10 W	1, 2
1885-2025	10 W	1, 2

**Note:** After the installation of radio frequency transmitters, check for disturbances from and to all electrical equipment in your vehicle, both in the standby and transmit modes.

Check all electrical equipment:

- With the ignition on.
- With the engine running.
- During a road test at various speeds.

Check that electromagnetic fields generated inside your vehicle cabin by the transmitter installed do not exceed applicable human exposure requirements.

## END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

### SYNC End User License Agreement (EULA)

- You have acquired a device ("DEVICE") that includes software licensed by Ford Motor Company and its affiliates ("FORD MOTOR COMPANY") from an affiliate of Microsoft Corporation ("MS"). Those installed software products of MS origin, as well as associated media, printed materials,

# Appendices

---

and "online" or electronic documentation ("MS SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The MS SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.

- The MS SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY. The additional software and systems of FORD MOTOR COMPANY origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("FORD SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The FORD SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The MS SOFTWARE and/or FORD SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by third party software and service suppliers. The additional software and services of third party origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The MS SOFTWARE, FORD SOFTWARE and THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE hereinafter collectively and individually will be referred to as "SOFTWARE".

**IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("EULA") DO NOT USE THE DEVICE OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICE, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).**

**GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENSE:** This EULA grants you the following license:

- You may use the SOFTWARE as installed on the DEVICE and as otherwise interfacing with systems and/or services provide by or through FORD MOTOR COMPANY or its third party software and service providers.

## **Description of Other Rights and Limitations**

- **Speech Recognition:** If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process.
- **Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompile and Disassembly:** You may not reverse engineer, decompile, or disassemble nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation.



# Appendices

---

- **Limitations on Distributing, Copying, Modifying and Creating Derivative Works:** You may not distribute, copy, make modifications to or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation.
- **Single EULA:** The end user documentation for the DEVICE and related systems and services may contain multiple EULAs, such as multiple translations and/or multiple media versions (e.g., in the user documentation and in the software). Even if you receive multiple EULAs, you are licensed to use only one (1) copy of the SOFTWARE.
- **SOFTWARE Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this EULA only as part of a sale or transfer of the DEVICE, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, and, if applicable, the Certificate(s) of Authenticity), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.
- **Termination:** Without prejudice to any other rights, FORD MOTOR COMPANY or MS may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA.
- **Security Updates/Digital Rights Management:** Content owners use the WMDRM technology included in your DEVICE to protect their intellectual property, included copyrighted content. Portions of the SOFTWARE on your DEVICE use WMDRM software to access WMDRM-protected content. If the WMDRM software fails to protect the

content, content owners may ask Microsoft to revoke the SOFTWARE's ability to use WMDRM to play or copy protected content. This action does not affect unprotected content. When your DEVICE downloads licenses for protected content, you agree that Microsoft may include a revocation list with the licenses. Content owners may require you to upgrade the SOFTWARE on your DEVICE to access their content. If you decline an upgrade, you will not be able to access content that requires the upgrade.

- **Consent to Use of Data:** You agree that MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and systems suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may collect and use technical information gathered in any manner as part of product support services related to the SOFTWARE or related services. MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and services suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may use this information solely to improve their products or to provide customized services or technologies to you. MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and systems suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may disclose this information to others, but not in a form that personally identifies you.

# Appendices

---

- **Internet-Based Services Components:** The SOFTWARE may contain components that enable and facilitate the use of certain Internet-based services. You acknowledge and agree that MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may automatically check the version of the SOFTWARE and/or its components that you are utilizing and may provide upgrades or supplements to the SOFTWARE that may be automatically downloaded to your DEVICE.
- **Additional Software/Services:** The SOFTWARE may permit FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates, supplements, add-on components, or Internet-based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components").

If FORD MOTOR COMPANY or third party software and services suppliers provide or make available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply.

If MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent make available Supplemental Components, and no other EULA terms are provided, then the terms of this EULA shall apply, except that the MS, Microsoft Corporation or affiliate entity providing the Supplemental Component(s) shall be the licensor of the Supplemental Component(s).

FORD MOTOR COMPANY, MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent reserve the right to discontinue without liability any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.

- **Links to Third Party Sites:** The MS SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to link to third party sites through the use of the SOFTWARE. The third party sites are not under the control of MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent. Neither MS nor Microsoft Corporation nor their affiliates nor their designated agent are responsible for (i) the contents of any third party sites, any links contained in third party sites, or any changes or updates to third party sites, or (ii) webcasting or any other form of transmission received from any third party sites. If the SOFTWARE provides links to third party sites, those links are provided to you only as a convenience, and the inclusion of any link does not imply an endorsement of the third party site by MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent.
- **Obligation to Drive Responsibly:** You recognize your obligation to drive responsibly and keep attention on the road. You will read and abide with the DEVICE operating instructions particularly as they pertain to safety and assumes any risk associated with the use of the DEVICE.

**UPGRADES AND RECOVERY MEDIA:** If the SOFTWARE is provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY separate from the DEVICE on media such as a ROM chip, CD ROM disk(s) or via web download or other means, and is labeled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" or "For Recovery Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such

# Appendices

SOFTWARE onto the DEVICE as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

### **INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS:**

All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, or their affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service providers, their affiliates and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.

**EXPORT RESTRICTIONS:** You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE is subject to U.S. and European Union export jurisdiction. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments. For additional information, see:

Website
<a href="http://www.microsoft.com/exporting/">http://www.microsoft.com/exporting/</a>

**TRADEMARKS:** This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, MS, Microsoft Corporation, third party software or service providers, their affiliates or suppliers.

**PRODUCT SUPPORT:** Product support for the SOFTWARE is not provided by MS, its parent corporation Microsoft Corporation, or their affiliates or subsidiaries. For product support, please refer to FORD MOTOR COMPANY instructions provided in the documentation for the DEVICE. Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact FORD MOTOR COMPANY for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICE.

**No Liability for Certain Damages:** EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR SERVICES SUPPLIERS, MS, MICROSOFT CORPORATION AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY

# Appendices

---

REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. IN NO EVENT SHALL MS, MICROSOFT CORPORATION AND/OR THEIR AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR ANY AMOUNT IN EXCESS OF U.S. TWO HUNDRED FIFTY DOLLARS (U.S. \$250.00).

- THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE THAT MAY EXPRESSLY BE PROVIDED FOR YOUR NEW VEHICLE.

## Adobe

Contains Adobe® [Flash® Player] or [AIR®] technology by Adobe Systems Incorporated. This [Licensee Product] contains [Adobe® Flash® Player] [Adobe® AIR®] software under license from Adobe Systems Incorporated, Copyright ©1995-2009 Adobe Macromedia Software LLC. All rights reserved. Adobe, Flash and AIR are trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

## End User Notice

### **Microsoft® Windows® Mobile for Automotive Important Safety Information**

This system Ford SYNC contains software that is licensed to Manufacturer FORD MOTOR COMPANY by an affiliate of Microsoft Corporation pursuant to a license agreement. Any removal, reproduction, reverse engineering or other unauthorized use of the software from this system in violation of the license agreement is strictly prohibited and may subject you to legal action.

**Read and follow instructions:** Before using your Windows Automotive- based system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual ("User's Guide"). Not following precautions found in this User's Guide can lead to an accident or other serious consequences.

**Keep User's Guide in vehicle:** When kept in the vehicle, the User's Guide will be a ready reference for you and other users unfamiliar with the Windows Automotive-based system. Please make certain that before using the system for the first time, all persons have access to the User's Guide and read its instructions and safety information carefully.

## WARNING



Operating certain parts of this system while driving can distract your attention away from the road, and possibly cause an accident or other serious consequences. Do not change system settings or enter data non-verbally (using your hands) while driving. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations. This is important since while setting up or changing some functions you might be required to distract your attention away from the road and remove your hands from the wheel.

## General Operation

**Voice Command Control:** Functions within the Windows Automotive-based system may be accomplished using only voice commands. Using voice commands while driving allows you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel.

# Appendices

---

**Prolonged Views of Screen:** Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention. Even occasional short scans to the screen may be hazardous if your attention has been diverted away from your driving task at a critical time.

**Volume Setting:** Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.

**Use of Speech Recognition Functions:** Speech recognition software is inherently a statistical process which is subject to errors. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system and address any errors.

**Navigation Features:** Any navigation features included in the system are intended to provide turn by turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please make certain all persons using this system carefully read and follow instructions and safety information fully.

**Distraction Hazard:** Any navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can seriously distract your attention and could cause an accident or other serious consequences. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations.

**Let Your Judgment Prevail:** Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Any such feature is not a substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this system should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.

**Route Safety:** Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions.

**Potential Map Inaccuracy:** Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following the suggested routes.

**Emergency Services:** Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for these locations. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals and clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features.

# Appendices

---

## **Telenav Software End User License Agreement**

Please read these terms and conditions carefully before you use the Telenav Software. Your use of the Telenav Software indicates that you accept these terms and conditions. If you do not accept these terms and conditions, do not break the seal of the package, launch, or otherwise use the Telenav Software.

These terms and conditions represent the agreement (“Agreement”) between you and Telenav, Inc. (“Telenav”) with respect to the Telenav Software (including upgrades, modifications, or additions thereto) (collectively “Telenav Software”). All references herein to “you” and “your” means you, your employees, agents, and contractors, and any other entity on whose behalf you accept these terms and conditions, all of whom shall also be bound by this Agreement. Additionally, all of your account information, as well as other payment and personal information provided by you to Telenav (directly or through the use of the Telenav Software, is subject to Telenav’s privacy policy located at <http://www.telenav.com>.

Telenav may revise this Agreement and the privacy policy at any time, with or without notice to you. You agree to visit <http://www.telenav.com> from time to time to review the then current version of this Agreement and of the privacy policy.

### **1. Safe and Lawful Use**

You acknowledge that devoting attention to the Telenav Software may pose a risk of injury or death to you and others in situations that otherwise require your undivided attention, and you therefore agree to comply with the following when using the Telenav Software: (a) observe all traffic laws and otherwise drive safely; (b) use your own personal judgment while driving. If you feel that a route suggested

by the Telenav Software instructs you to perform an unsafe or illegal maneuver, places you in an unsafe situation, or directs you into an area that you consider to be unsafe, do not follow such instructions; (c) do not input destinations, or otherwise manipulate the Telenav Software, unless your vehicle is stationary and parked; (d) do not use the Telenav Software for any illegal, unauthorized, unintended, unsafe, hazardous, or unlawful purposes, or in any manner inconsistent with this Agreement; (e) arrange all GPS and wireless devices and cables necessary for use of the Telenav Software in a secure manner in your vehicle so that they will not interfere with your driving and will not prevent the operation of any safety device (such as an airbag).

You agree to indemnify and hold Telenav harmless against all claims resulting from any dangerous or otherwise inappropriate use of the Telenav Software in any moving vehicle, including as a result of your failure to comply with the directions above.

### **2. Account Information**

You agree: (a) when registering the Telenav Software, to provide Telenav with true, accurate, current, and complete information about yourself, and (b) to inform Telenav promptly of any changes to such information, and to keep it true, accurate, current and complete.

### **3. Software License**

Subject to your compliance with the terms of this Agreement, Telenav hereby grants to you a personal, non-exclusive, non-transferable license (except as expressly permitted below in connection with your permanent transfer of the Telenav Software license), without the right to sublicense, to use the Telenav Software (in object code form only) in order to access and use the Telenav Software. This license shall terminate upon

# Appendices

---

any termination or expiration of this Agreement. You agree that you will use the Telenav Software only for your personal business or leisure purposes, and not to provide commercial navigation services to other parties.

## **3.1 License Limitations**

You agree not to do any of the following: (a) reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, translate, modify, alter or otherwise change the Telenav Software or any part thereof; (b) attempt to derive the source code, audio library or structure of the Telenav Software without the prior express written consent of Telenav; (c) remove from the Telenav Software, or alter, any of Telenav's or its suppliers' trademarks, trade names, logos, patent or copyright notices, or other notices or markings; (d) distribute, sublicense or otherwise transfer the Telenav Software to others, except as part of your permanent transfer of the Telenav Software; or (e) use the Telenav Software in any manner that (i) infringes the intellectual property or proprietary rights, rights of publicity or privacy or other rights of any party, (ii) violates any law, statute, ordinance or regulation, including but not limited to laws and regulations related to spamming, privacy, consumer and child protection, obscenity or defamation, or (iii) is harmful, threatening, abusive, harassing, tortuous, defamatory, vulgar, obscene, libelous, or otherwise objectionable; and (f) lease, rent out, or otherwise permit unauthorized access by third parties to the Telenav Software without advanced written permission of Telenav.

## **4. Disclaimers**

To the fullest extent permissible pursuant to applicable law, in no event will Telenav, its licensors and suppliers, or agents or employees of any of the foregoing, be liable for any decision made or action taken by you or anyone else in reliance on the information provided by the Telenav Software. Telenav also does not warrant the accuracy of the map or other data used for the Telenav Software. Such data may not always reflect reality due to, among other things, road closures, construction, weather, new roads and other changing conditions. You are responsible for the entire risk arising out of your use of the Telenav Software. For example but without limitation, you agree not to rely on the Telenav Software for critical navigation in areas where the well-being or survival of you or others is dependent on the accuracy of navigation, as the maps or functionality of the Telenav Software are not intended to support such high risk applications, especially in more remote geographical areas.

TELENAV EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS AND EXCLUDES ALL WARRANTIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, WHETHER STATUTORY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ALL WARRANTIES WHICH MAY ARISE FROM COURSE OF DEALING, CUSTOM OR TRADE AND INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS WITH RESPECT TO THE TELENAV SOFTWARE. Certain jurisdictions do not permit the disclaimer of certain warranties, so this limitation may not apply to you.

# Appendices

---

## **5. Limitation of Liability**

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU OR TO ANY THIRD PARTY FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES (INCLUDING IN EACH CASE, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, DAMAGES FOR THE INABILITY TO USE THE EQUIPMENT OR ACCESS DATA, LOSS OF DATA, LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR THE LIKE) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TELENAV HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

NOTWITHSTANDING ANY DAMAGES THAT YOU MIGHT INCUR FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ALL DAMAGES REFERENCED HEREIN AND ALL DIRECT OR GENERAL DAMAGES IN CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE) OR OTHERWISE), THE ENTIRE LIABILITY OF TELENAV AND OF ALL OF TELENAV'S SUPPLIERS SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT ACTUALLY PAID BY YOU FOR THE TELENAV SOFTWARE. SOME STATES AND/OR JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

## **6. Arbitration and Governing Law**

You agree that any dispute, claim or controversy arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the Telenav Software shall be settled by independent arbitration involving a neutral arbitrator and administered by the American Arbitration Association in the County of Santa Clara, California. The arbitrator shall apply the

Commercial Arbitration Rules of the American Arbitration Association, and the judgment upon the award rendered by the arbitrator may be entered by any court having jurisdiction. Note that there is no judge or jury in an arbitration proceeding and the decision of the arbitrator shall be binding upon both parties. You expressly agree to waive your right to a jury trial.

This Agreement and performance hereunder will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of California, without giving effect to its conflict of laws provisions. To the extent judicial action is necessary in connection with the binding arbitration, both Telenav and you agree to submit to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of the County of Santa Clara, California. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply.

## **7. Assignment**

You may not resell, assign, or transfer this Agreement or any of your rights or obligations, except in totality, in connection with your permanent transfer of the Telenav Software, and expressly conditioned upon the new user of the Telenav Software agreeing to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Agreement. Any such sale, assignment or transfer that is not expressly permitted under this paragraph will result in immediate termination of this Agreement, without liability to Telenav, in which case you and all other parties shall immediately cease all use of the Telenav Software. Notwithstanding the foregoing, Telenav may assign this Agreement to any other party at any time without notice, provided the assignee remains bound by this Agreement.



# Appendices

---

## **8. Miscellaneous**

### **8.1**

This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement between Telenav and you with respect to the subject matter hereof.

### **8.2**

Except for the limited licenses expressly granted in this Agreement, Telenav retains all right, title and interest in and to the Telenav Software, including without limitation all related intellectual property rights. No licenses or other rights which are not expressly granted in this Agreement are intended to, or shall be, granted or conferred by implication, statute, inducement, estoppel or otherwise, and Telenav and its suppliers and licensors hereby reserve all of their respective rights other than the licenses explicitly granted in this Agreement.

### **8.3**

By using the Telenav Software, you consent to receive from Telenav all communications, including notices, agreements, legally required disclosures or other information in connection with the Telenav Software (collectively, "Notices") electronically. Telenav may provide such Notices by posting them on Telenav's Website or by downloading such Notices to your wireless device. If you desire to withdraw your consent to receive Notices electronically, you must discontinue your use of the Telenav Software.

### **8.4**

Telenav's or your failure to require performance of any provision shall not affect that party's right to require performance at any time thereafter, nor shall a waiver of any breach or default of this Agreement constitute a waiver of any subsequent breach or default or a waiver of the provision itself.

### **8.5**

If any provision herein is held unenforceable, then such provision will be modified to reflect the intention of the parties, and the remaining provisions of this Agreement will remain in full force and effect.

### **8.6**

The headings in this Agreement are for convenience of reference only, will not be deemed to be a part of this Agreement, and will not be referred to in connection with the construction or interpretation of this Agreement. As used in this Agreement, the words "include" and "including," and variations thereof, will not be deemed to be terms of limitation, but rather will be deemed to be followed by the words "without limitation."

## **9. Other Vendors Terms and Conditions**

The Telenav Software utilizes map and other data licensed to Telenav by third party vendors for the benefit of you and other end users. This Agreement includes end-user terms applicable to these companies (included at the end of this Agreement), and thus your use of the Telenav Software is also subject to such terms. You agree to comply with the following additional terms and conditions, which are applicable to Telenav's third party vendor licensors:

### **9.1 End User Terms Required by HERE North America, LLC**

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and Telenav ("Telenav") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

© 2013 HERE. All rights reserved.

# Appendices

---

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © Department of Natural Resources Canada.

HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.

©United States Postal Service® 2014. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4.

The Data for Mexico includes certain data from Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía.

## TERMS AND CONDITIONS

### 9.2 End User Terms Required by NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd ("NAV2") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

© 20xx. All rights reserved.

#### **Permitted Use.**

You agree to use this Data together with the Telenav Software solely for the internal business and personal purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you agree not to otherwise

reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble, create any derivative works of, or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

#### **Restrictions.**

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by Telenav, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not use this Data (a) with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

#### **Warning.**

The Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

#### **No Warranty.**

This Data is provided to you "as is," and you agree to use it at your own risk. Telenav and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to,

# Appendices

---

content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error-free.

## **Disclaimer of Warranty:**

TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

## **Disclaimer of Liability:**

TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS

HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

## **Export Control.**

You shall not export from anywhere any part of the Data or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. Department of Commerce. To the extent that any such export laws, rules or regulations prohibit HERE from complying with any of its obligations hereunder to deliver or distribute Data, such failure shall be excused and shall not constitute a breach of this Agreement.

## **Entire Agreement.**

These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between Telenav (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

## **Governing Law.**

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois [insert "Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used], without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You

# Appendices

agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the State of Illinois [insert “The Netherlands” where European HERE Data is used] for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

## **Government End Users.**

If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a “commercial item” as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. (“FAR”) 2.101, is licensed in accordance with these End-User Terms, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following “Notice of Use,” and shall be treated in accordance with such Notice:

### **NOTICE OF USE**

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/  
SUPPLIER) NAME: HERE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/  
SUPPLIER) ADDRESS: c/o Nokia, 425  
West Randolph Street, Chicago, Illinois  
60606

This Data is a commercial item as  
defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to  
these End-User Terms under which this  
Data was provided.

©1987 – 2014 HERE – All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify HERE prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

## I. US/Canada Territory

A. United States Data. The End-User Terms for any Application containing Data for the United States shall contain the following notices:

“HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.”

“©United States Postal Service® 20XX. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4.”

B. Canada Data. The following provisions apply to the Data for Canada, which may include or reflect data from third party licensors (“Third Party Data”), including Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada (“Her Majesty”), Canada Post Corporation (“Canada Post”) and the Department of Natural Resources of Canada (“NRCan”):

1. Disclaimer and Limitation: Client agrees that its use of the Third Party Data is subject to the following provisions:

a. Disclaimer: The Third Party Data is licensed on an “as is” basis. The licensors of such data, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data, either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose.

# Appendices

---

b. Limitation on Liability: The Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable: (i) in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of such Data; or (ii) in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the Data.

2. Copyright Notice: In connection with each copy of all or any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada, Client shall affix in a conspicuous manner the following copyright notice on at least one of: (i) the label for the storage media of the copy; (ii) the packaging for the copy; or (iii) other materials packaged with the copy, such as user manuals or end user license agreements: "This data includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © The Department of Natural Resources Canada. All rights reserved."

3. End-User Terms: Except as otherwise agreed by the parties, in connection with the provision of any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada to End-Users as may be authorized under the Agreement, Client shall provide such End-Users, in a reasonably conspicuous manner, with terms (set forth with other end user terms required to be provided under the

Agreement, or as otherwise may be provided, by Client) which shall include the following provisions on behalf of the Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan:

The Data may include or reflect data of licensors, including Her Majesty the Queen in the Right of Canada ("Her Majesty"), Canada Post Corporation ("Canada Post") and the Department of Natural Resources Canada ("NRCan"). Such data is licensed on an "as is" basis. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data, either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of the data or the Data. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the data or the Data. End User shall indemnify and save harmless the licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, and their officers, employees and agents from and against any claim, demand or action, irrespective of

# Appendices

the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action, alleging loss, costs, expenses, damages or injuries (including injuries resulting in death) arising out of the use or possession of the data or the Data.

4. Additional Provisions: The terms contained in this Section are in addition to all of the rights and obligations of the parties under the Agreement. To the extent that any of the provisions of this Section are inconsistent with, or conflict with, any other provisions of the Agreement, the provisions of this Section shall prevail.

II. Mexico. The following provision applies to the Data for Mexico, which includes certain data from the Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía (“INEGI”):

A. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging containing Data for Mexico shall contain the following notice: “Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)”

III. Latin America Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Territory	Notice
Ecuador	“INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO MILITAR DEL ECUADOR AUTORIZACION N° IGM-2011-01- PCO-01 DEL 25 DE ENERO DE 2011” “source: © IGN 2009 - BD TOPO ®”

Guadeloupe, French Guiana and Martinique Mexico	“Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)”
----------------------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------

IV. Middle East Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country	Notice
Jordan	“© Royal Jordanian Geographic Centre”. The foregoing notice requirement for Jordan Data is a material term of the Agreement. If Client or any of its permitted sublicensees (if any) fail to meet such requirement, HERE shall have the right to terminate Client’s license with respect to the Jordan Data.

B. Jordan Data. Client and its permitted sublicensees (if any) are restricted from licensing and/or otherwise distributing HERE’s database for the country of Jordan (“Jordan Data”) for use in Enterprise Applications to (i) non-Jordanian entities for use of the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) Jordan-based customers. In addition, Client, its permitted sublicensees (if any) and End-Users are restricted from using the Jordan Data in Enterprise Applications if such party is (i) a non-Jordanian entity using the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) a Jordan-based customer. For purposes

# Appendices

---

of the foregoing, “Enterprise Applications” shall mean Geomarketing applications, GIS applications, mobile business asset management applications, call center applications, telematics applications, public organization Internet applications or for providing geocoding services.

## V. Europe Territory

### A. Use of Certain Traffic Codes in Europe

1. General Restrictions Applicable to Traffic Codes. Client acknowledges and agrees that in certain countries of the Europe Territory, Client will need to obtain rights directly from third party RDS-TMC code providers to receive and use the Traffic Codes in the Data and to deliver to End-Users Transactions in any way derived from or based on such Traffic Codes. For such countries, HERE shall deliver the Data incorporating Traffic Codes to Client only after receiving certification from Client of its having obtained such rights.

2. Display of Third Party Rights Legends for Belgium. Client shall, for each Transaction that uses Traffic Codes for Belgium, provide the following notice to the End-User: “Traffic Codes for Belgium are provided by the Ministerie van de Vlaamse Gemeenschap and the Ministère de l'Équipement et des Transports.”

B. Paper Maps. With respect to any license granted to Client relating to making, selling or distributing paper maps (i.e., a map fixed on a paper or paper-like medium): (a) such license with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain is conditioned on Client's entering into and complying with a

separate written agreement with the Ordnance Survey (“OS”) to create and sell paper maps, Client's paying to the OS any and all applicable paper map royalties, and Client's complying with the OS copyright notice requirements; (b) such license for selling or otherwise distributing for charge with respect to Data for the Territory of Czech Republic is conditioned on Client's obtaining prior written consent from Kartografie a.s.; (c) such license for selling or distributing with respect to Data for the Territory of Switzerland is conditioned on Client's obtaining a permit from Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland; (d) Client is restricted from using Data for the Territory of France to create paper maps with a scale between 1:5,000 and 1:250,000; and (e) Client is restricted from using any Data to create, sell or distribute paper maps that are the same or substantially similar, in terms of data content and specific use of color, symbols and scale, to paper maps published by the European national mapping agencies, including without limitation, Landvermessungämter of Germany, Topografische Dienst of the Netherlands, Nationaal Geografisch Instituut of Belgium, Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland, Bundesamt für Eich-und Vermessungswesen of Austria, and the National Land Survey of Sweden.

C. OS Enforcement. Without limiting Section IV(B) above, with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain, Client acknowledges and agrees that the Ordnance Survey (“OS”) may bring a direct action against Client to enforce compliance with the OS copyright notice (see Section IV(D) below) and paper map requirements (see Section IV(B) above) contained in this Agreement.

## Appendices

D. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country(ies) Notice

Austria “© Bundesamt für Eich- und Vermessungswesen”

Croatia  
Cyprus,  
Estonia,  
Latvia,  
Lithuania,  
Moldova,  
Poland,  
Slovenia  
and/or  
Ukraine

“© EuroGeographics”

France “source: © IGN 2009 – BD TOPO ®”

Germany “Die Grundlagendaten wurden mit Genehmigung der zuständigen Behörden entnommen”

Great Britain “Contains Ordnance Survey data © Crown copyright and database right 2010 Contains Royal Mail data © Royal Mail copyright and database right 2010”

Greece “Copyright Geomatics Ltd.”

Hungary “Copyright © 2003; Top-Map Ltd.”

Italy “La Banca Dati Italiana è stata prodotta usando quale riferimento anche cartografia numerica ed al tratto prodotta e fornita dalla Regione Toscana.”

Norway “Copyright © 2000; Norwegian Mapping Authority”

Portugal “Source: IgeoE – Portugal”

Spain “Información geográfica propiedad del CNIG”

Sweden “Based upon electronic data © National Land Survey Sweden.”

Switzerland “Topografische Grundlage: © Bundesamt für Landestopographie.

E. Respective Country Distribution. Client acknowledges that HERE has not received approvals to distribute map data for the following countries in such respective countries: Albania, Belarus, Kyrgyzstan, Moldova and Uzbekistan. HERE may update such list from time to time. The license rights granted to Client under this TL with respect to the Data for such countries are contingent upon Client’s compliance with all applicable laws and regulations, including, without limitation, any required licenses or approvals to distribute the Application incorporating such Data in such respective countries.



# Appendices

---

## VI. Australia Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Copyright. Based on data provided under license from PSMA Australia Limited ([www.psmalimited.com.au](http://www.psmalimited.com.au)). Product incorporates data which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited, GM Holden Limited, Intelematics Australia Pty Ltd and Continental Pty Ltd.

B. Third Party Notices for Australia. In addition to the foregoing, the End-User Terms for any Application containing RDS-TMC Traffic Codes for Australia shall contain the following notice: “Product incorporates traffic location codes which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited and its licensors.”

## VII. China Territory

### **Personal Use Only**

You agree to use this Data together with [insert name of Client Application] for the solely personal, non-commercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you may copy this Data only as necessary for your personal use to (i) view it, and (ii) save it, provided that you do not remove any copyright notices that appear and do not modify the Data in any

way. You agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

### **Restrictions**

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by NAV2, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs. You agree to cease using this Data if you fail to comply with these terms and conditions.

### **Limited Warranty**

NAV2 warrants that (a) the Data will perform substantially in accordance with the accompanying written materials for a period of ninety (90) days from the date of receipt, and (b) any support services provided by NAV2 shall be substantially as described in applicable written materials provided to you by NAV2, and NAV2's support engineers will make commercially reasonable efforts to solve any problem issues.

# Appendices

## ***rigCustomer Remedies***

NAV2 and its suppliers' entire liability and your exclusive remedy shall be, at NAV2's sole discretion, either (a) return of the price paid, if any, or (b) repair or replacement of the Data that do not meet NAV2's Limited Warranty and that are returned to NAV2 with a copy of your receipt. This Limited Warranty is void if failure of the Data has resulted from accident, abuse, or misapplication. Any replacement Data will be warranted for the remainder of the original warranty period or thirty (30) days, whichever is longer. Neither these remedies nor any product support services offered by NAV2 are available without proof of purchase from an authorized international source.

## ***No Other Warranty:***

EXCEPT FOR THE LIMITED WARRANTY SET FORTH ABOVE AND TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OWNERSHIP OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Certain warranty exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

## ***Limited Liability:***

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR

FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF NAV2 OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL NAV2'S OR ITS SUPPLIERS' LIABILITY HEREUNDER EXCEED THE PRICE PAID. Certain liability exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

## ***Export Control***

You agree not to export to anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations.

## ***IP Protection***

The Data are owned by NAV2 or its suppliers and are protected by applicable copyright and other intellectual property law and treaties. The Data are provided solely on the basis of a license to use, not sale.

## ***Entire Agreement***

These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between NAV2 (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

# Appendices

---

## **Governing Law.**

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the People's Republic of China, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. Any dispute arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder shall be submitted to the Shanghai International Economic and Trade Arbitration Commission for arbitration.

## **Gracenote® Copyright**

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright© 2000-2007 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2007 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents #5,987,525, #6,061,680, #6,154,773, #6,161,132, #6,230,192, #6,230,207, #6,240,459, #6,330,593 and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent: #6,304,523.

Gracenote and CDDB are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote™" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

## **Gracenote® End User License Agreement (EULA)**

This device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of 2000 Powell Street Emeryville, California 94608 ("Gracenote").

The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this device to do disc and music file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers ("Gracenote Servers"), and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End User functions of this device.

This device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote.

You agree that you will use the content from Gracenote ("Gracenote Content"), Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal, non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data (except in a Tag associated with a music file) to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE CONTENT, GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive licenses to use the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licenses terminate, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers. Gracenote, respectively, reserve all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers and Gracenote Content, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will either Gracenote

# Appendices

---

become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide, including any copyrighted material or music file information. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its respective rights, collectively or separately, under this agreement against you, directly in each company's own name.

Gracenote uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow Gracenote to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page at [www.gracenote.com](http://www.gracenote.com) for the Gracenote Privacy Policy.

THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, EACH ITEM OF GRACENOTE DATA AND THE GRACENOTE CONTENT ARE LICENSED TO YOU "AS IS". NEITHER GRACENOTE MAKES ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF ANY GRACENOTE DATA FROM THE GRACENOTE SERVERS OR GRACENOTE CONTENT. GRACENOTE COLLECTIVELY AND SEPARATELY RESERVE THE RIGHT TO DELETE DATA AND/OR CONTENT FROM THE COMPANIES' RESPECTIVE SERVERS OR, IN THE CASE OF GRACENOTE, CHANGE DATA CATEGORIES FOR ANY CAUSE THAT GRACENOTE DEEMS SUFFICIENT. NO WARRANTY IS MADE THAT EITHER GRACENOTE CONTENT OR THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS ARE ERROR-FREE OR THAT THE FUNCTIONING OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED. GRACENOTE IS NOT OBLIGATED TO PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY ENHANCED OR ADDITIONAL DATA TYPES THAT GRACENOTE MAY CHOOSE TO PROVIDE IN THE FUTURE AND IS FREE TO DISCONTINUE ITS ONLINE SERVICES AT ANY TIME. GRACENOTE DISCLAIM ALL

WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. NEITHER GRACENOTE WARRANTS THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER.

© Gracenote 2007.

## **Vehicle with SYNC only United States and Mexico**

FCC ID: KMHSG1G1

IC: 1422A-SG1G1

### **Mexico**

Model: KMHSG1P1

NOM-121-SCT1-2009

The operation of this equipment is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This equipment or device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this equipment or device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

## **Vehicle with SYNC with Touchscreen/My Touch**

FCC ID: KMHSYNGG2

IC: 1422A-SYNGG2

# Appendices

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

## WARNING



Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

The antenna used for this transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

## TYPE APPROVALS

### RF Certification Logos for Tire Pressure Monitoring Sensor(s)

Schrader AG2SZ4 Numero de Registro  
CNC: H-13498

E207816

Argentina

TRA  
REGISTERED NO:EROI30238/14  
DEALER NO:DA0047074/10

E207817

Abu Dhabi, Dubai



E197509



E202555

Brazil

Herby, Schrader Electronics UK Ltd., declares that this TPMS is in compliance with the essential requirements and other provisions of directive 1999/5/EC. The declaration of conformity may be consulted at [emcteam@schrader.co.uk](mailto:emcteam@schrader.co.uk)

E207818

European Union EU

# Appendices

Kingdom of Jordan Type approval for tyre pressure sensor.  
Model: AG2SZ4  
Manufacturer: Schrader Electronics  
Type Approval Number: TRC/LPD/2014/56

E207819

Jordan



**NTC**

Type Approved

No:ESD-1408639C

E198001

Philippines

RAQP/33A/0514/S/(14-0847)

E207820

Malaysia



E197811

Moldova

Complies with  
IDA Standards  
DA 00461

E207822

Singapore

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC  
Numéro d'agrément: MR9098  
ANRT 2014  
Date d'agrément: 14/03/2014

E207821

Morocco



TA-2014/064

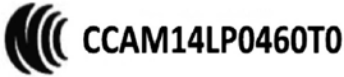
Approved

E198002

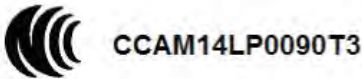
South Africa

# Appendices

---



E203899



E203679

Taiwan



Schrader Electronics цім стверджує, що  
обладнання Радіопередавач моделі AG2S24  
системи контролю тиску в шині  
автомобіла відповідає вимогам Технічного  
регламенту радіобуднання і  
телекомунікаційного кінцевого  
(термінального) обладнання (Постанова КМУ  
№ 679 від 24 червня 2009 р.) Декларація  
відповідності знаходиться на сайті Schrader

Electronics та надається за запитом на електронну адресу [doc.request@schrader.co.uk](mailto:doc.request@schrader.co.uk)

E198009

Ukraine





# Index

## A

- A/C
  - See: Climate Control.....83
- About This Manual.....5
- ABS
  - See: Brakes.....114
- ABS driving hints
  - See: Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes.....114
- Accessories
  - See: Replacement Parts Recommendation.....8
- Adjusting the Headlamps - LHD.....162
  - Horizontal Aim Adjustment.....162
  - Vertical Aim.....162
- Adjusting the Headlamps - RHD.....163
  - Horizontal Aim Adjustment.....164
  - Vertical Aim.....163
- Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....49
- Air Conditioning
  - See: Climate Control.....83
- Air Vents.....83
  - Center Air Vents.....83
  - Side Air Vents.....83
- Alarm
  - See: Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Integral Battery.....47
  - See: Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Interior Sensor.....45
  - See: Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Perimeter Alarm.....45
- Ambient Lighting.....57
- Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With:
  - Integral Battery.....47
  - Alarm System.....47
  - Arming the Alarm.....48
  - Disarming the Alarm.....48
  - Full and Reduced Guard.....48
  - Triggering the Alarm.....47
- Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Interior Sensor.....45
  - Alarm System.....45
  - Arming the Alarm.....47
  - Disarming the Alarm.....47
  - Full and Reduced Guard.....46
  - Triggering the Alarm.....46
- Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With:
  - Perimeter Alarm.....45
  - Arming the Alarm.....45
  - Disarming the Alarm.....45
- Appendices.....266
- At a Glance.....9
- Audible Warnings and Indicators.....65
  - Headlamps On Warning Chime.....65
  - Keyless Warning Alert.....65
  - Parking Brake On Warning Chime.....66
- Audio Control.....49
  - MEDIA.....49
  - Seek, Next or Previous.....49
- Audio System.....199
  - General Information.....199
- Audio Unit - Vehicles With: Premium AM/FM/CD.....200
- Autolamps.....54
  - Windshield Wiper Activated Headlamps.....54
- Automatic Climate Control.....86
- Automatic Transmission.....109
  - Automatic Transmission Adaptive Learning.....111
  - Brake-Shift Interlock.....110
  - If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck In Mud or Snow.....111
  - SelectShift Automatic™ Transmission.....110
  - Understanding the Positions of Your Automatic Transmission.....109
- Automatic Transmission Fluid Check.....157
- Autowipers.....51
- Auxiliary Power Points.....96
  - 12 Volt DC Power Point.....96
  - Locations.....96

## B

- Battery
  - See: Changing the 12V Battery.....159
- Bonnet Lock
  - See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....152
- Brake Fluid Check.....158
- Brakes.....114
  - General Information.....114

# Index

Breaking-In.....	137	Checking the Wiper Blades.....	160
Brakes and Clutch.....	137	Child Restraint Positioning.....	18
Engine.....	137	ISOFIX Child Seats.....	20
Tires.....	137	Child Safety.....	15
Bulb Specification Chart.....	168	Cigar Lighter.....	96
<b>C</b>		Cleaning the Alloy Wheels.....	170
Cabin Air Filter.....	90	Cleaning the Exterior.....	169
Capacities and Specifications - 2.3L		Body Paintwork Preservation.....	169
EcoBoost™.....	194	Cleaning the Chrome Trim.....	169
Capacities.....	194	Cleaning the Headlamps.....	169
Specifications.....	195	Cleaning the Rear Window.....	169
Capacities and Specifications -		Cleaning the Interior.....	169
5.0L.....	196	Instrument Cluster Screens, LCD Screens	
Capacities.....	196	and Radio Screens.....	169
Specifications.....	196	Rear Windows.....	170
Capacities and Specifications.....	191	Seatbelts.....	169
Car Wash		Clearing All MyKeys.....	37
See: Cleaning the Exterior.....	169	Climate.....	245
Catalytic Converter.....	105	Climate Control Voice Commands.....	247
Driving with a Catalytic Converter.....	105	Climate Control.....	83
Center Console.....	97	Principle of Operation.....	83
Locking Storage Bin.....	97	Climate Controlled Seats.....	94
Changing a Bulb.....	164	Cooled Seats.....	95
Daytime Running Lamp.....	166	Heated Seats.....	94
Front Direction Indicator.....	165	Closing the Convertible Top.....	135
Front Fog Lamp.....	166	Clutch Fluid Check - Manual	
Front Side Lamp.....	165	Transmission.....	158
Headlamp.....	165	Cold Weather Precautions.....	138
Headlamp Low and High Beam.....	165	Convertible Top.....	134
LED Lamps.....	166	Coolant Check	
Rear Fog Lamp.....	167	See: Engine Coolant Check.....	156
Reversing Lamp.....	166	Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator.....	28
Changing a Fuse.....	151	Creating a MyKey.....	36
Fuses.....	151	Programming/Changing Configurable	
Changing a Road Wheel.....	183	Settings.....	36
Dissimilar Spare Wheel and Tire Assembly		Cruise Control.....	50
Information.....	184	Principle of Operation.....	127
Tire Change Procedure.....	185	Cruise control	
Changing the 12V Battery.....	159	See: Using Cruise Control.....	127
Remove and Reinstall the Battery.....	160	Cup Holders.....	97
Changing the Wiper Blades - LHD.....	160	<b>D</b>	
Changing the Wiper Blades - RHD.....	161	Data Recording.....	7
Changing the Windshield Wiper		Daytime Running Lamps.....	55
Blades.....	161	Digital Radio.....	201
Service Position.....	161	Direction Indicators.....	57
Checking MyKey System Status.....	38		

# Index

Drive Control.....	129
Selectable Drive Modes.....	129
Selectable Steering.....	130
Driver Airbag.....	23
Driver and Passenger Knee Airbags.....	27
Driving Aids.....	129
Driving at High Speed.....	188
Driving Hints.....	137
Driving Through Water.....	138
DRL	
See: Daytime Running Lamps.....	55
<b>E</b>	
Economical Driving.....	137
Accessories.....	138
Anticipation.....	138
Efficient Speed.....	138
Electrical Systems.....	138
Gear Shifting.....	137
Tire Pressures.....	137
Electromagnetic Compatibility.....	266
End User License Agreement.....	267
SYNC End User License Agreement (EULA).....	267
Engine Block Heater.....	101
Using the Engine Block Heater.....	102
Engine Coolant Check.....	156
Adding Engine Coolant.....	157
Engine Immobilizer	
See: Passive Anti-Theft System.....	45
Engine Oil Check.....	156
Adding Engine Oil.....	156
Engine Oil Dipstick.....	156
Entertainment.....	225
AM/FM/DAB Radio.....	225
Bluetooth Audio.....	232
CD.....	228
SD Card Slot and USB Port.....	229
Supported Media Players, Formats and Metadata Information.....	232
Event Data Recording	
See: Data Recording.....	7
Exterior Mirrors.....	59
Fold-Away Exterior Mirrors.....	59
Heated Exterior Mirrors.....	60
Power Exterior Mirrors.....	59
Power-Folding Mirrors.....	59
Signal Indicator Mirrors.....	60
<b>F</b>	
Fastening the Seatbelts.....	21
Using Safety Belts During Pregnancy.....	22
First Aid Kit.....	140
Flat Tire Inflation	
See: Temporary Mobility Kit.....	171
Floor Mats.....	138
Fog Lamps - Front	
See: Front Fog Lamps.....	55
Fog Lamps - Rear	
See: Rear Fog Lamps.....	56
Front Exterior Overview.....	9
Front Fog Lamps.....	55
Front Passenger Sensing System.....	24
Fuel and Refueling.....	103
Fuel Consumption Figures.....	198
Fuel Consumption.....	107
Calculating Fuel Economy.....	108
Filling the Fuel Tank.....	108
Fuel Filler Funnel Location.....	104
Fuel Filter.....	159
Fuel Quality.....	104
Long-Term Storage.....	104
Fuel Shutoff.....	140
Fuses.....	144
Fuse Specification Chart.....	144
Passenger Compartment Fuse Panel.....	148
Power Distribution Box.....	144
<b>G</b>	
Gauges.....	61
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge.....	62
Fuel Gauge.....	62
Information Display.....	61
General Information on Radio	
Frequencies.....	32
Glasses Holder.....	97
Global Opening.....	58
Opening the Windows.....	59

# Index

<b>H</b>	
Handbrake	
See: Parking Brake.....	114
Hazard Warning Flashers.....	140
Headlamp Adjusting	
See: Adjusting the Headlamps - LHD.....	162
See: Adjusting the Headlamps - RHD.....	163
Headlamp Exit Delay.....	55
Headlamp Leveling.....	56
Recommended Headlamp Leveling Switch	
Positions.....	56
Head Restraints.....	91
Adjusting the Head Restraint.....	92
Tilting Head Restraints .....	92
Heated Windows and Mirrors.....	90
Heated Exterior Mirror.....	90
Heated Rear Window.....	90
Heating	
See: Climate Control.....	83
Hill Start Assist.....	115
Switching the System On and Off.....	116
Using Hill Start Assist.....	115
Hints on Controlling the Interior	
Climate.....	87
Cooling the Interior Quickly.....	89
General Hints.....	87
Heating the Interior Quickly.....	88
Recommended Settings for Cooling.....	89
Recommended Settings for Heating.....	89
Side Window Defogging in Cold	
Weather.....	90
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock	
Brakes.....	114
Hood Lock	
See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	152
<b>I</b>	
Information Display Control.....	50
Information Displays.....	67
General Information.....	67
Information.....	241
Calendar.....	242
Emergency Assistance.....	242
Notifications.....	241
Information Messages.....	75
Airbag.....	75
Alarm.....	75
Battery and Charging System.....	76
Doors and Locks.....	76
Electronic Stability Control.....	77
Engine.....	77
Fuel.....	77
Hill Start Assist.....	77
Keys and Intelligent Access.....	77
Maintenance.....	78
MyKey.....	79
Park Brake.....	80
Park Pilot.....	80
Seats.....	80
Starting System .....	80
Steering System.....	81
Traction Control.....	81
Transmission.....	81
Tyre Pressure Monitoring System.....	82
Installing Child Restraints.....	15
Attaching a Child Seat With a Support	
Leg.....	18
Attaching a Child Seat With Top	
Tethers.....	17
Booster Seats.....	16
Child Restraints for Different Mass	
Groups.....	15
ISOFIX Anchor Points.....	17
Top Tether Anchor Points.....	17
Instrument Cluster.....	61
Instrument Lighting Dimmer.....	55
Instrument Panel Overview - LHD.....	12
Instrument Panel Overview - RHD.....	13
Interior Lamps.....	57
Map Lamps.....	57
Interior Mirror.....	60
Auto-Dimming Mirror.....	60
Introduction.....	5
<b>J</b>	
Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	141
Connecting the Jumper Cables.....	141
Jump Starting.....	142
Preparing Your Vehicle.....	141
Removing the Jumper Cables.....	142

# Index

## K

Keyless Entry.....	42
Disabled Passive Keys.....	44
General Information.....	42
Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key Blade.....	44
Locking Your Vehicle.....	43
Passive Key.....	43
Unlocking Your Vehicle.....	43
Keyless Starting.....	98
Ignition Modes.....	98
Keys and Remote Controls.....	32

## L

Lighting Control.....	53
Headlamp Flasher.....	54
High Beams.....	53
Lighting.....	53
General Information.....	53
Limited Slip Differential.....	113
Load Carrying.....	131
General Information.....	131
Locking and Unlocking.....	40
Auto Relock.....	41
Locking and Unlocking the Doors From Inside.....	41
Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key Blade.....	41
Opening the Luggage Compartment.....	42
Power Door Locks.....	40
Remote Control.....	40
Locks.....	40
Lug Nuts	
See: Changing a Road Wheel.....	183

## M

Maintenance.....	152
General Information.....	152
Manual Climate Control.....	84
Manual Seats.....	92
Manual Transmission.....	109
Selecting Reverse Gear.....	109
Media Hub.....	203
Message Center	
See: Information Displays.....	67

## Mirrors

See: Heated Windows and Mirrors.....	90
See: Windows and Mirrors.....	58
Mobile Communications Equipment.....	8
MyKey Troubleshooting.....	39
MyKey™.....	35
Principle of Operation.....	35

## N

Navigation.....	248
Destination Mode.....	248
Map Mode.....	254
Michelin Travel Guide.....	250
Navigation Map Updates.....	257
Navigation Voice Commands.....	257
Places of Interest (POI) Categories.....	250
Quick-touch Buttons.....	256
Setting Your Navigation Preferences.....	250

## O

Oil Check	
See: Engine Oil Check.....	156
Opening and Closing the Hood.....	152
Closing the Hood.....	153
Opening the Hood.....	152
Opening the Convertible Top.....	134
Using the Tonneau Caps.....	135

## P

Parking Aids.....	122
Principle of Operation.....	122
Parking Brake.....	114
Passenger Airbag.....	24
.....	24
Passive Anti-Theft System.....	45
Arming the Engine Immobilizer.....	45
Coded Keys.....	45
Disarming the Engine Immobilizer.....	45
Principle of Operation.....	45
PATS	
See: Passive Anti-Theft System.....	45
Pedestrian Protection.....	30
Principle of Operation.....	30



# Index

Storage Compartments.....	97	Traction Control.....	117
Sun Visors.....	60	Principle of Operation.....	117
Illuminated Vanity Mirror.....	60	Transmission.....	109
Supplementary Restraints System.....	23	Transmission.....	109
Principle of Operation.....	23	Transporting the Vehicle.....	132
Symbols Glossary.....	5	Type Approvals.....	289
SYNC™ 2.....	204	RF Certification Logos for Tire Pressure	
General Information.....	204	Monitoring Sensor(s).....	289
SYNC™ Troubleshooting.....	258		

## T

Technical Specifications	
See: Capacities and Specifications.....	191
Temporary Mobility Kit.....	171
First Stage: Inflating the Tire with Sealing	
Compound and Air.....	173
General Information.....	172
Second Stage: Checking Tire	
Pressure.....	175
Tips for Use of the Kit.....	172
What to Do After the Tire has Been	
Sealed.....	175
What to do When a Tire Is Punctured.....	173
Tire Care.....	177
Tire Inflation When Punctured	
See: Temporary Mobility Kit.....	171
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	179
Changing Tires With a Tire Pressure	
Monitoring System.....	180
How Temperature Affects the Tire	
Pressures.....	180
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Reset	
Procedure.....	182
Understanding the Tire Pressure Monitoring	
System.....	181
Tire Repair Kit	
See: Temporary Mobility Kit.....	171
Tires	
See: Wheels and Tires.....	171
Towing a Trailer.....	132
Towing Points.....	132
Towing the Vehicle on Four	
Wheels.....	133
Emergency Towing.....	133
Recreational Towing.....	133
Towing.....	132

## U

Under Hood Overview - 2.3L	
EcoBoost™.....	154
Under Hood Overview - 5.0L.....	155
USB Port.....	203
Using Cruise Control.....	127
Switching Cruise Control Off.....	128
Switching Cruise Control On.....	127
Using MyKey With Remote Start	
Systems.....	39
Using Snow Chains.....	178
Using Stability Control.....	119
Electronic Stability Control .....	119
Line Lock.....	120
Using Summer Tires.....	178
Using Traction Control.....	117
Switching the System Off .....	117
System Indicator Lights and	
Messages.....	117
Using Winter Tires.....	178

## V

Vehicle Care.....	169
Vehicle Dimensions - Convertible.....	192
Vehicle Dimensions - Coupe.....	191
Vehicle Identification Number.....	194
Vehicle Identification Plate.....	193
Vehicle Interior Overview.....	11
Ventilation	
See: Climate Control.....	83
Vents	
See: Air Vents.....	83
VIN	
See: Vehicle Identification Number.....	194
Voice Control.....	50

# Index

## W

Warning Lamps and Indicators.....	63
Anti-Lock Braking System.....	63
Battery.....	63
Bonnet Ajar.....	63
Boot Ajar.....	63
Brake System.....	63
Cruise Control.....	63
Direction Indicator.....	63
Door Ajar.....	63
Engine Coolant Temperature.....	64
Engine Oil.....	64
Fasten Safety Belt.....	64
Front Airbag.....	64
Front Fog Lamps.....	64
High Beam.....	64
Low Beam Malfunction.....	64
Low Fuel Level.....	64
Low Tire Pressure Warning.....	64
Parking Lamps.....	64
Rear Fog Lamps Indicator.....	64
Service Engine Soon.....	65
Stability Control.....	65
Stability Control Off.....	65
Warning Triangle.....	140
Washer Fluid Check.....	158
Washers	
See: Cleaning the Exterior.....	169
See: Wipers and Washers.....	51
Welcome Lighting.....	57
Mustang Projection Lamps.....	57
Wheel Nuts	
See: Changing a Road Wheel.....	183
Wheels and Tires.....	171
General Information.....	171
Technical Specifications.....	189
Windows and Mirrors.....	58
Windshield Washers.....	52
Windshield Wipers.....	51
Intermittent Wipe.....	51
Speed Dependent Wipers.....	51
Winter Tires	
See: Using Winter Tires.....	178
Wiper Blades	
See: Checking the Wiper Blades.....	160
Wipers and Washers.....	51

Wrecker Towing

  See: Transporting the Vehicle.....132